

USP SECURE ENTRY SERVER®



UNITED SECURITY PROVIDERS

Documentation Series

HTTP Secure Proxy

Administration Guide

Version 4.27.0.5



United Security Providers AG
www.united-security-providers.ch
info@united-security-providers.ch

Headquarter Stauffacherstrasse 65/15 CH-3014 Bern Tel. +41 31 959 02 02
Baslerpark Mürtchenstrasse 27 CH-8048 Zürich Tel. +41 44 496 61 11



UNITED SECURITY PROVIDERS

Copyright © 2026 United Security Providers AG

This document is protected by copyright under the applicable laws and international treaties. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form and distributed to third parties by any means without prior written authorization of United Security Providers AG.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED TO THE EXTENT PERMISSIBLE UNDER THE APPLICABLE LAWS.



Contents

1 Preface	1
1.1 Introduction	1
1.2 Document Structure	1
2 Functionality Introduction	1
2.1 Introduction	1
2.2 Functionality	1
3 Configuration Reference	2
3.1 Glossary	2
3.2 Standard Apache Modules, mod_ssl	2
3.3 Configuration Reference Syntax	5
3.4 Http-, HttpsListener Directives	6
3.4.1 Http(s)Listener - Core Directives	6
3.4.2 Http(s)Listener - Request/Response Filter Directives	10
3.4.3 Http(s)Listener - HTTP 1.1 Gateway	30
3.4.4 Http(s)Listener - SSL Gateway	34
3.4.5 Http(s)Listener - RPC(SSL Gateway)	35
3.4.6 Http(s)Listener - Lua (SSL Gateway)	35
3.4.7 Http(s)Listener - Denial of Service (DoS) Prevention	36
3.4.8 Http(s)Listener - Request Limitations	37
3.4.9 Http(s)Listener - Parameter Parser	43
3.4.10 Http(s)Listener - Debug Trace	43
3.4.11 Http(s)Listener - GeoIP Location Blocking	44
3.5 SRManager Directives	46
3.5.1 Configuration Model	46
3.5.2 SRManager - Core Directives	46
3.5.3 SRManager - Request Filter Directives	50
3.5.4 SRManager - Session Control Directives	65
3.5.5 Session Store	71
3.5.6 Client Data (CD) Control	74
3.5.7 SRManager - Recorder Directives	83
3.5.8 SRManager - Access Control Directives	85
3.5.9 SRManager - Request/Response Filter Directives	94
3.5.10 SRManager - HTTP 1.1 Gateway	94
3.5.11 SRManager - Response Text Filter (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)	110



3.5.12 SRManager - Path Translation (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)	113
3.5.13 SRManager - AAI (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)	114
3.5.14 SRManager - Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI)	117
3.5.15 SRManager - AAS	117
3.5.16 SRManager - SSL Gateway	118
3.5.17 SRManager - ICA (SSL Gateway)	118
3.5.18 SRManager - CSG (SSL Gateway)	119
3.5.19 SRManager - RPC (SSL Gateway)	120
3.5.20 SRManager - Lua (SSL Gateway)	121
3.5.21 SRManager - Airlock API	121
3.5.22 SRManager - Monitor	122
3.5.23 SRManager - Request Limitations	122
3.5.24 SRManager - Parameter Parser	122
3.5.25 SRManager - Info Portal	122
3.5.26 SRManager - Debug Trace	122
3.6 HSP specific headers	123
3.7 SSL Headers	124
4 Configuration Guide	126
4.1 Introduction	126
4.1.1 Merging Location Definitions	126
4.1.2 Sample Configuration Files	126
4.1.3 Placement of Configuration- and Log-Files	126
4.2 Using Third Party Modules in HttpsListener	126
4.2.1 Limitations in mod_ssl	126
4.2.2 Setting the number of TLSv1.3 session tickets	127
4.3 Using Third Party Modules in SRM	127
4.3.1 Limitations	127
4.3.2 Using Binary Distributions	127
4.3.3 Using Source Distributions	127
4.3.4 Deployment Instructions	127
4.4 Session Management	127
4.5 Session Store	128
4.5.1 Setting up an Apache Geode Session Store	129
4.6 Events	132
4.6.1 Logging of HTTP Headers	132
4.6.2 Environment Variables	132



4.6.3	Application Event Headers	132
4.6.4	Variable List	133
4.6.5	Event and Variable Matrix	134
4.6.6	Single events of HSP_CL_AC, HSP_CL_RF, HSP_CL_SE, and HSP_CL_GW	135
4.6.7	mod_security event logging	137
4.7	Logging of Request Statistic Data	138
4.8	Logging of Session Statistic Data	138
4.9	Logging SSL information of frontend connections	138
4.10	Logging SSL information of backend connections	139
4.11	Logging TLS keys of backend connections	139
4.12	Monitoring Log Events	139
4.13	Logfile Rotation	140
4.14	loghandler	140
4.14.1	Available log handlers	140
4.15	Customizing Error Pages	142
4.15.1	Locations, Addressing Deployment	142
4.15.2	Replacing installed Error Pages	142
4.15.3	Dynamic Error Pages (SHTML pages)	142
4.15.4	Setting up the "Cookie-Check Error" Page	143
4.15.5	Setting up the "Insufficient Session Security Error" Page	143
4.16	L1 Client Data Store Settings	144
4.16.1	Client Data Lifetime Settings	144
4.16.2	Client Credential Timeout Settings	144
4.16.3	Location-specific Timeout Settings	145
4.17	Configuring mod_security	145
4.17.1	Overview	145
4.17.2	Performance Considerations	145
4.17.3	Recommended Configuration	145
4.17.4	Note on custom session cookie names (SCDID)	145
4.18	Configuring mod_header_modify	145
4.19	External Session Representations (ESR)	145
4.19.1	Overview	145
4.19.2	ESR Cookie	146
4.19.3	ESR URL	146
4.19.4	ESR SSL Session ID	146
4.19.5	Session ID Lock	147
4.19.6	Advanced Session ID Lock Rules	148



- 4.19.7 SSL Session ID Requirements 151
- 4.19.8 ESR Bearer 152
- 4.20 Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration 152
 - 4.20.1 Introduction 152
 - 4.20.2 mod_hgw_balancer 153
 - 4.20.3 Configuration Settings 153
 - 4.20.4 mod_hgw_fo 154
- 4.21 Setting Action on IP/SSL SID Change 156
 - 4.21.1 Overview 156
 - 4.21.2 Configuration Steps 156
- 4.22 Configure Data Recording 157
 - 4.22.1 Data Recording Base Configuration 157
 - 4.22.2 Enable Data Recording for a Location 157
- 4.23 Session Attributes 157
 - 4.23.1 When To Create Session Attribute Headers 157
 - 4.23.2 Session Attribute Header Syntax 157
 - 4.23.3 Usage Types 159
 - 4.23.4 Examples 161
- 4.24 Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) 162
 - 4.24.1 Overview 162
 - 4.24.2 Processing Order Details 162
 - 4.24.3 Generation of new Requests 164
 - 4.24.4 HTTP Request- and Response-Body Buffers 164
- 4.25 AAI: Configure Redirect to Login On 401 164
 - 4.25.1 Overview 164
 - 4.25.2 Rule Details 164
 - 4.25.3 Configuration Notes 165
 - 4.25.4 SRM Configuration Sample 165
- 4.26 AAI: AAI Custom Rules 166
 - 4.26.1 Introduction 166
 - 4.26.2 AAI Rule Engine Model 166
- 4.27 AAI: Integrating Form-based Authentication 172
 - 4.27.1 Overview, Goals 172
 - 4.27.2 System Description, Presumptions 172
 - 4.27.3 Step 1: Analyzing the Application 172
 - 4.27.4 Step 2: Writing the Rules 172
 - 4.27.5 Sample Rules 173



4.27.6 Further Notes	174
4.28 Secure Zone Gateway (SZGW) Configuration	174
4.28.1 Introduction	174
4.28.2 Installing a Standalone SZGW	174
4.28.3 Configuring the SRM's SZGW Location	174
4.28.4 Setting up the Virtual Server for SZGW	175
4.28.5 SZGW Architectural notes	177
4.29 Request Filtering	177
4.29.1 Request Line Filter	178
4.29.2 Header Validation	178
4.29.3 URL Encryption	178
4.29.4 HTML Form Validation	181
4.29.5 Static White-Lists	183
4.29.6 SOAP/XML Validation	184
4.30 ICAP Request and Response Modification	185
4.30.1 Architecture	185
4.30.2 Features and Limitations in Detail	186
4.31 Citrix / ICA Protocol Gateway	186
4.31.1 Supported Citrix Versions	186
4.31.2 Architecture	186
4.31.3 Features and Limitations in Detail	187
4.31.4 Ticket Store	187
4.32 Citrix Secure Gateway Replacment	187
4.33 Outlook Anywhere for Windows - OAW	188
4.33.1 Exchange Setup	188
4.33.2 SES Setup	188
4.33.3 Outlook 2010 Setup	190
4.33.4 Features and Limitations in Detail	191
4.33.5 Ticket Store	191
4.34 HTTP/2 Support	191
4.34.1 Limitations and restrictions when using HTTP/2	192
4.35 Basic Web Socket Support	192
4.35.1 Configuration Scenario 1: single web socket back-end server	193
4.35.2 Configuration Scenario 2: several load balanced web socket back-end servers	194
4.35.3 Basic Web Socket Security Features	195
4.36 Unblu Co-Browsing	195
4.36.1 General information	195



4.36.2 HTS configuration	196
4.36.3 SRM Configuration	197
4.37 HTTP Analyzer	198
4.37.1 DBG_TraceLog	198
4.37.2 SetEnvIf	198
4.37.3 loganalyze	198
4.38 Client Restriction	198
4.39 Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI)	199
4.39.1 Rule Analysis	199
4.39.2 ACI Rule Model	199
4.40 Session Transfer	201
4.40.1 Prerequisites	202
4.40.2 httpd.conf SRM	202
4.41 Cross-Site Request Forgery Protection	204
4.41.1 Overview	204
4.41.2 Protection of HTML-Form based POST data	204
4.41.3 Protection of HTML-Query-Parameter data	205
4.41.4 Protection of JavaScript generated requests	206
4.41.5 Protection via JavaScript	209
4.41.6 Use cases	210
4.41.7 POST requests	211
4.41.8 GET requests	211
4.42 Access Control Status Handler	211
A References	212
A.1 Documents	212
B Installation Layout	213
B.1 Directories Structure and Usage	213



1 Preface

1.1 Introduction

This is the Administration Guide for the USP Secure Entry Server® HTTP Secure Proxy. Targeted to System Administrators, this document contains installation, configuration and operating information.

1.2 Document Structure

The information in chapters "[Configuration Reference](#)" and "[Configuration Guide](#)" enables you to configure the system according to your security policy and add new applications.

The Appendix contains additional information including document references.

2 Functionality Introduction

2.1 Introduction

The HTTP Secure Proxy (HSP) implements the HTTP Protocol Support for the USP Secure Entry Server® (SES) . The HTTP Secure Proxy bases on the SES Base System which provides protocol-independent services such as system backup and restore functionality.

2.2 Functionality

The SES implements and ensures security through enforced authentication. The SES does not perform authentication itself but checks each client request.

For HTTP applications, the first request is forwarded to the login service (SLS). After successful authentication, requests are handed over directly to the applications.

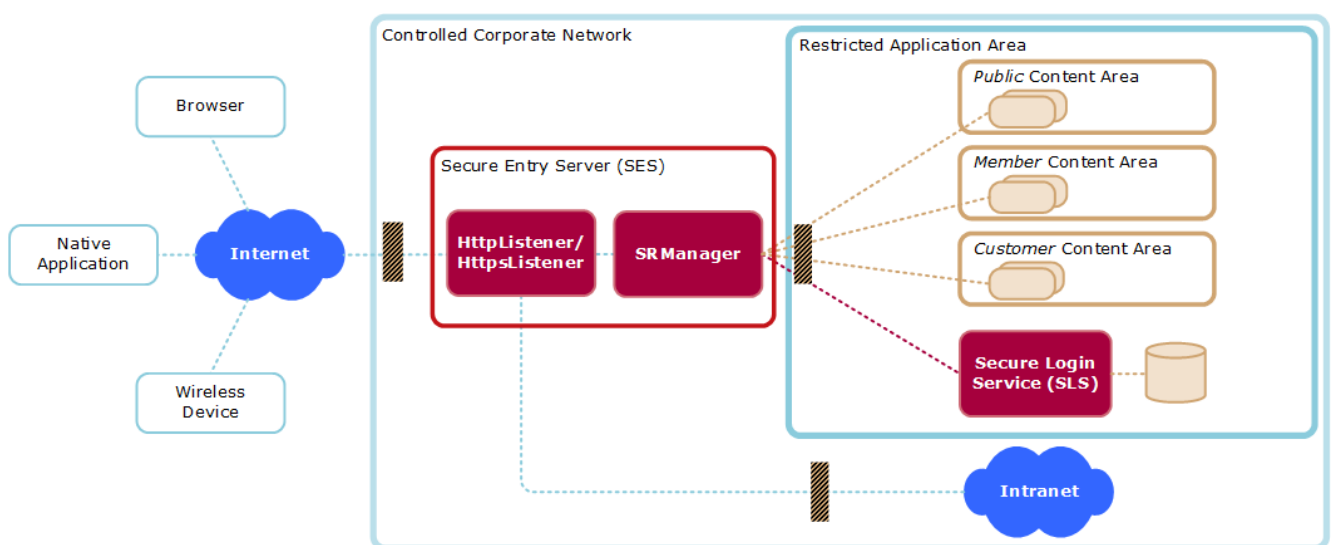


Figure 1: Architecture overview



The SES is the only system directly accessible and visible from the Internet. All other SES Infrastructure components are hidden behind it. To be able to safeguard application servers and infrastructure elements, all communication terminates on the SES. It establishes connections to the inner side on behalf of Internet clients.

HttpListener

The HttpListener supports initial browser requests and redirect to HTTPS.

HttpsListener

The HttpsListener is the main entry point which terminates the TCP connection, provides filtering, policy control, content compression, and request prioritization.

SRManager

The SRManager features session management, access control, fine granular policy control, load balancing, URL mapping and backend integration.

3 Configuration Reference

3.1 Glossary

Table 1: Glossary

Term	Definition
Component	HttpListener (htl), HttpsListener (hts), SRManager (srm).
Instance	A specific instance of <component>, where a component can be started multiple times.
Session Credentials	The HTTP Secure Proxy (HSP) credentials which allow access to a specific access area and URL. Represented as a cookie named "SessionCredentials", see also table " Session Types ". The session control keeps this cookie inside the HSP and it is never sent to the client. See section " SRManager - Session Control Directives " for details.
Environment Variable	If we talk about environment variables, we always mean variables set by mod_setenvif. mod_setenvif internal variables like Request_URI, Remote_Addr or Local_Addr are not environment variables!

3.2 Standard Apache Modules, mod_ssl

The Components of the HSP are based on Apache Web Server extended with mod_ssl, which provides SSL support.

Each HSP component uses a subset of all available Apache modules. Most modules are statically linked but some (marked as "optional") can be loaded as dynamic shared library (DSO) modules.

The table below lists the available standard modules and suggest their usage within the HSP. The table lists also optional HSP modules which may be loaded on demand.

Table 2: Standard Apache modules

Module	Description	Exists in
http_core	Apache Core Features	All HSP Components.



Table 2: (continued)

Module		
	Recommended Usage	Use to configure core features such as virtual servers, listener ports and error pages
mod_log_config	Description	This module configures the Apache logging facility.
	Exists in	All HSP Components.
	Recommended Usage	Use to configure log files. This module allows to configure different log files per virtual server. Further, it is possible to add HTTP headers to the access log. See also section "Events". Please note that customizing log settings may conflict with the HSP Manager and B1 Security. See [APACHE] for details. To stay on the safe side, the following rules must be obeyed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not generate log files outside of the standard log directories created during installation. See section "Placement of Configuration- and Log-Files"
mod_mime	Description	This module provides directive for determining the types of files from the filename and for association of handlers with files.
	Exists in	All HSP Components
	Recommended Usage	Use directive "SetHandler" to select handlers (modules) per location. Do not use other directives
mod_include	Description	This module introduces support for SSI /SHTML
	Exists in	SRManager
	Recommended Usage	Use to evaluate SSI statements in SHTML pages. NOTE: For security reasons, the SSI "#exec" tag is deactivated.
mod_alias	Description	This module provides for mapping different parts of the host file system in the document tree, and for URL redirection.
	Exists in	All HSP Components
	Recommended Usage	Can be used to map URLs within applications. Do not try to map HSP internal URLs, such as the cookie-check URL. Use only with USP support. Note: HSP Access Control is enforced after mapping URLs.
mod_authz_host	Description	This module provides access control based on client hostname, IP address, or other attributes of the client request.
	Exists in	Http(s)Listener
	Recommended Usage	Used for host-based access restrictions but usually not used in standard installations since the HSP introduces its own Access Control facility.
mod_memm	Description	Memory management and monitoring tool
	Exists in	Http(s)Listener and SRManager (optional module for prefork binaries)
	Usage Notes	An optional module provided by United Security Providers used to control the memory consumption of processes. It measures the memory consumption (heap) of each Apache child process and terminates the process if its memory size has exceeded a multiple of its initial memory size. The initial memory size multiply by a factor (MEMM_Factor directive, default is 10) defines the maximum allowed memory size. The process is terminated gracefully when reaching this limit. Memory size check is performed every eightieth request performed by the child process). You may use the command line tool "memm" in order to calculate a useful MEMM_Factor and server settings. The module must only be used for prefork binaries.
mod_rewrite	Description	This module provides a rule-based rewriting engine to rewrite requested URLs on the fly



Table 2: (continued)

Module		
	Exists in	Http(s)Listener
	Recommended Usage	Use to configure redirects based on client attributes, such as the HTTP "User-Agent" Header. Optional: Use to implement HTTP access for Web Crawlers.
mod_setenvif	Description	This module provides the ability to set environment variables based upon attributes of the request.
	Exists in	All HSP Components
	Usage Notes	Optional: Use to handle browser implementation errors.
mod_ssl	Description	Provides the SSL (HTTPS) protocol support.
	Exists in	All HSP Components
	Usage Notes	Enable SSL in HttpsListener only.
mod_so	Description	This module provides for loading of executable code and modules into the server at start-up or restart time.
	Exists in	All HSP Components
	Recommended Usage	Use to load additional modes into the HSP. Please note that such a module must support mod_ssl.
mod_jk	Description	Tomcat-Apache plug-in that handles the communication between Tomcat and Apache.
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	Requires mod_dir
mod_dir	Description	This module provides for "trailing slash" redirects and serving directory index files.
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	Required by mod_jk
mod_cache/ mod_disk_cache	Description	Module for content caching
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	Be very careful when using this module. It must never be used for non-public content. You have to enable caching using the HSP_AllowCache directive.
mod_auth*	Description	Used to implement basic auth in order to secure access to the HSP info portal
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	see section Info Portal
mod_qos	Description	Used to implement request prioritization and application specific request filters
	Exists in	HttpsListener and SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	See section " Http(s)Listener - Request Limitations " for information about available commands.
mod_security	Description	Used to specify application specific request filters
	Exists in	All HSP Components (optional module)
	Usage Notes	-
mod_deflate	Description	Allows content compression between the client and the HSP
	Exists in	Http(s)Listener
	Usage Notes	Ensure that you filter the Accept-Encoding header, see the sample configuration file for the HttpsListener for details.
mod_hsp_info	Description	see section Info Portal
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	-
mod_airlock_api	Description	Implements the proprietary phion airlock authentication interface in order to integrate to login services and applications which implement this interface.



Table 2: (continued)

Module		
	Exists in	SRManager (optional)
	Usage Notes	-
mod_redirect_id	Description	Enforces client redirect (302) for certain request patterns.
	Exists in	SRManager (optional module)
	Usage Notes	Example: used to prevent a well known Adobe Acrobat reader vulnerability
mod_unique_id	Description	Generates unique requests ID's.
	Exists in	All HSP Components (optional module)
	Usage Notes	Required by mod_security.
mod_soap_filter	Description	Web service security module providing validation mechanism for SOAP and XML messages.
	Exists in	Http(s)Listener (optional)
	Usage Notes	Use the provided schema and naming definition files to initialize the module.
mod_autoindex	Description	Supports directory listing.
	Exists in	SRManager (optional, USPSPmin package only)
	Usage Notes	Requires the directive "HSP_AllowIndexes on" in the per server configuration in order to enable mod_autoindex.
mod_setenvifplus	Description	The mod_setenvifplus module allows you to set environment variables according to whether different aspects of the request match regular expressions you specify
	Exists in	HttpListener, HttpsListener, SRManager
	Usage Notes	See http://modsetenvifplus.sourceforge.net/ for further details
mod_http2	Description	This module provides HTTP/2 (RFC 7540) support for front-end connections.
	Exists in	HttpListener, HttpsListener
	Usage Notes	See https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.4/mod/mod_http2.html for further details.

Documentation on standard Apache Modules can be found at [\[APACHE\]](#), Documentation on mod_SSL can be found at [\[MOD_SSL\]](#).

3.3 Configuration Reference Syntax

The table below explains the columns used in the configuration reference tables

Table 3: Configuration Reference- Column Description

Column	Description
Directive	Specifies the directive which can be used in the Apache configuration file. Some directives can be set or overridden by the login servers using "Session Attributes". For these directives, the name of the "Session Attribute" is the same as the directive.



Table 3: (continued)

Column	Description
Validity	<p>Defines at which scope in the apache configuration file this directive can be used and if it can be specified using a Session Attribute.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Global Directive can be specified once outside of all <VirtualHost> definitions. • Virtual Server Can be specified outside or inside <VirtualHost> definitions. • Location Can be specified inside <Location> definitions • Session Attribute This directive can be set using Session Attribute set by Login Service. If session attributes should be used to set a directive, the directive values must be set to the value "\$ACA". Example: <code>HGW_Host \$ACA</code> See section Session Attributes for details.
Description	Description of the directive

3.4 Http-, HttpsListener Directives

3.4.1 Http(s)Listener - Core Directives

Table 4: Http(s)Listener Core directives

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_HostIdPath	Global	<p>Defines the file containing the HSP host identifier. The HSP identifier is used as a unique identifier for all components located on this host.</p> <p>This identifier is used for logging and correlation.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_HostIdPath <pathname></p> <p>Default is /etc/usp/hsp/hostid.</p> <p>Example: HSP_HostIdPath /etc/usp/hsp/hostid</p> <p>The system's host id (gethostid(3C)) is used as the default value if no such file is specified or has not been found.</p>
HSP_AbsoluteRedirects	Virtual Server	<p>Controls generating absolute redirects. "Off" means, that relative (no host name) redirects are sent to the client, "on" means that absolute (including schema and host name) redirects are sent to the client, e.g. for the cookie check. Can also be set using the 'BrowserMatch' directive.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_AbsoluteRedirects on off</p> <p>Default: off</p>
HSP_InstanceId	Global	<p>Defines the server instance identifier.</p> <p>The HSP identifier is used by all components as a unique instance identifier for request and client correlation.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_InstanceId <string></p> <p>Example: HSP_InstanceId srm</p> <p>Default is the parent process PID.</p>



Table 4: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_TraceModules	Global	<p>Enables tracing for the specified modules and events. Syntax: <code>HSP_TraceModules <module:flags> ...</code> where module can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>mod_secure_request_manager_gateway</code> <p>flags is a bitset consisting of the following flags:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0001 trace request/content handler entry• 0x0002 trace request/content handler exit• 0x0004 trace request/content details• 0x0008 trace module initialisation details• 0x0100 trace module name in each trace line• 0x200 show request headers for handler entry/exit• 0x400 show request URI for handler entry/exit• 0x800 show request URI, request arguments, current handler• 0x1000 show processed data <p>Do not use in productive systems. Example: <code>HSP_TraceModules</code> <code>mod_secure_request_manager_gateway:0cff</code></p> <hr/> <p>Note Tracing information is logged with log level "info", therefore the log level using directive "LogLevel" has to be set to "info" or "debug".</p>
HSP_TraceMagicValue	Global	<p>Set the flag which is set for all the modules if <code>HSP_TraceMagic</code> is set to <code>all</code>. The default value is <code>0xffff</code>. The usage of the flags is described within <code>HSP_TraceModules</code>.</p>



Table 4: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_TraceMagic	Global	<p>Enables selective tracing of clients sending a cookie with a "magic" value. The magic value is used within the log files to identify the trace messages.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_TraceMagic <value> <value> must be one of the following values</p> <p>off Disables the usage of trace magic (this is the default value)</p> <p>on Enable trace magic for all enabled HSP_TraceModules</p> <p>all With this trace magic enables all modules for tracing. See HSP_TraceMagicValue to configure the trace flags being set for the trace modules.</p> <p>The client needs to send a Cookie with the following format: HSP_TraceMagic=<magic> The value <magic> is used to identify the client within the log files.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Since this mechanism uses a cookie to track the client, the cookie HSP_TraceMagic must be configured with the SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies directive within the SRManager otherwise the cookie will be removed by the header filter.</p> <hr/>
HSP_TraceOptions	Global	<p>Controls tracing.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_TraceOptions <option>,<option>,... where option can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>stderr</code> causes tracing message to be sent to stderr without prepending the apache header. <hr/> <p>Note Using this directive may confuse log file adapters and monitoring tools since the log message do not use the apache format.</p> <hr/>



Table 4: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_ClientHost	Virtual Host	<p>Changes the default HTTP Host specification which is used by the client to access this virtual host. Affects rewriting the HTTP "location" header in HTTP responses using status 302. This directive can be used to support port mapping which violates RFC2616. If this directive is not set, host and port specified using directives "VirtualHost", "Port", "Listen" or "Bind" are used to rewrite HTTP "Location" headers sent by application servers.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_ClientHost <host[:port]> "\$" If "\$" is used, the HTTP "Host" header sent from client is used. Please note that some HTTP client implementations do not add the port to this header. If the client does not send a HTTP "Host" header, a relative HTTP "Location" header is generated.</p>
HSP_Chroot	Global	<p>Implements a chrooted server. Does usually not require any configuration or environment changes.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_Chroot <path></p>
HSP_DeflateRequestBody	Environment Variable	<p>Activate input filter for deflating request body before any validator or body rewriter module</p> <p>Syntax: SetEnvIf <attribute> <regex> HSP_DeflateRequestBody Example: SetEnvIf Content-Encoding "gzip" HSP_DeflateRequestBody</p>
HSP_RedirectMatch	Virtual Host	<p>Directive works similar to RedirectMatch of mod_alias but allows to use additional variables within the destination URL. If the 'keep-query' flag is specified, query parameters from the original request are preserved also if query parameters are specified in the redirect target 'url'.</p> <p>Variables:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • \$SERVERNAME: represents the hostname within the HTTP request host header <p>Syntax: HSP_RedirectMatch <regex> <url> [keep-query] Example: HSP_RedirectMatch /(.*) https://\$SERVERNAME/\$1 keep-query</p>
HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects	Virtual Host	<p>When a redirect response is generated with a target location starting with "double slashes" (absolute URL without protocol identifier) HSP will reduce the target to a single slash if not disabled.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects 'on' 'off' Default is "on".</p>
HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude	Virtual Host	<p>This directive allows to define target hosts for which redirect URLs without protocol identifier should be allowed without disabling the whole feature. A List of known-good-host can be specified as regex.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude <regex> Example: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude "www\trusted\.org"</p>



3.4.2 Http(s)Listener - Request/Response Filter Directives

Table 5: Http(s)Listener - Request/Response Filter Directives

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RC_MaxPostSize	Location	Maximum number of bytes allowed to be transferred to the server. Syntax: <code>RC_MaxPostSize <bytes></code> Default is "49152"
RC_MaxPostSize_Status	Location	Status Code which is returned if RC_MaxPostSize is exceeded. Syntax: <code>RC_MaxPostSize_Status <status code></code>
RC_MaxPostSize_StatusMsg	Location	If you have defined RC_MaxPostSize_Status you can optionally specify a status message that should be sent to the client. Syntax: <code>RC_MaxPostSize_StatusMsg <status msg></code> Example: <code>RC_MaxPostSize_StatusMsg</code> " <code><html><head><title>RC_MaxPostSize_StatusMsg</title></head><body>RC_MaxPostSize exceeded</body></html></code> "
RC_MaxResponseSize	Location	Maximum number of bytes allowed to be transferred from the server. Syntax: <code>RC_MaxResponseSize <bytes></code> Default is no limitation
RF_ServerAllowMethod	Virtual Server	Restricts the allowed HTTP method for the virtual server. Methods not defined by this directive are denied and result in a "405 Method Not Allowed" response. Multiple methods may be specified for each server configuration. Use the "+" prefix to allow a method and the "-" prefix to deny the specified method. The method TRACE can't be enabled and the server response for TRACE requests is always a 403 forbidden. Syntax: <code>RF_ServerAllowMethod "+" "-"<method></code> Example: <code>RF_ServerAllowMethod -POST +PUT</code> Default is "+GET +HEAD +POST"



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_LocationAllowMethod	Location	<p>Restricts the allowed HTTP method for the location. This directive takes only effect if it has explicitly defined for a location. This filter is applied after the method filter defined by RF_ServerAllowMethod. Methods denied by RF_ServerAllowMethod can't be allowed by this command.</p> <p>Methods excluded by this directive are denied and result in a "405 Method Not Allowed" response. Multiple methods may be specified for each server configuration. Use the "+" prefix to allow a method and the "-" prefix to deny the specified method.</p> <p>The method TRACE can't be enabled and the server response for TRACE requests is always a 403 forbidden.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_LocationAllowMethod "+" "-"<method></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. "+" and "-" adds and removes methods from the current location configuration.</p> <p>Example: RF_LocationAllowMethod -POST Default is "+GET +HEAD +POST"</p>
RF_UE_PassPhrase	Virtual Server	<p>Pass phrase used to generate a symmetric key for URL encryption.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_PassPhrase <string></p>
RF_UE_OldPassPhrase	Virtual Server	<p>Defines a per-server secret which has been used in the past. Requests encrypted by an old pass phrase are decrypted and forwarded to the path defined by the RF_UE_OldPassPhraseErrorPage directive. The directive may be defined multiple times within the server configuration.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_OldPassPhrase <string></p>
RF_UE_OldPassPhraseErrorPage	Virtual Server	<p>Defines a URL (path) to which a request is redirected if it has been encrypted by an old pass phrase. The received request line is passed via the specified query parameter.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_OldPassPhraseErrorPage <path> <query>, Default are path=/srm-error-pages/Error500.html and query=ue_url.</p>
RF_UE_DecryptionFailureRedirect	Virtual Server	<p>Defines a path to which a client gets redirected to in case of a decryption error. The optional setting "mode" allows to set a custom error page for path decryption errors (mode "path") and query string decryption errors (mode "query"). The mode "path query" can be used for a common error page. If no mode is set the default is mode "path".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_DecryptionFailureRedirect <path> [<mode>]</p> <p>Without the use of this directive the status code 404 is delivered on path decryption errors. However, on query string decryption errors the request is yet passed to the backend.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_JSFunction	Location	<p>Controls URL encryption within JavaScripts, see also section "URL Encryption". This directive defines a function name whose parameter must be encrypted. Example JavaScript code:</p> <pre>setField(value, "../action");</pre> <p>Multiple function names may be specified for each location. Use the "+" prefix to add additional rules to a location or the "-" prefix to remove a rule. A name without a prefix disable configuration inherited from the upper location.</p> <p>The following function names are reserved and can't be defined by RF_UE_JSFunction: "string", "catch", "if", "for", "while", "switch", and "with".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_JSFunction ['+' -'] <name> [<action> <pos>]</p> <p>name</p> <p>specifies the name of the function whose parameter must be encrypted. Use '\$' to enable automatic encryption of all parameters within any functions. Automatic encryption requires the following attributes to recognize a parameter as an URL: the string must match the regular expression defined by RF_UE_JSCharset.</p> <p>action</p> <p>can either be 'absolute', 'relative' or 'query' and defines how to encrypt the string: 'absolute' creates an absolute URL using the URL of the current request (this is the default) while 'relative' does not modify the URL (except escaping special characters such as umlauts or spaces). 'query' is used if the string is not a path but a query component of an URL (the rule defined by RF_UE_EncodeQuery is used if the query string consists of a name/value pair).</p> <p>pos</p> <p>defines the position within the parameter list</p> <p>Example (see JavaScript example above):</p> <pre>RF_UE_JSFunction +setField absolute 2</pre>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_JSVariable	Location	<p>Controls URL encryption within JavaScripts, see also section "Encryption". This directive defines a variable name whose assigned values must be encrypted. Example JavaScript code:</p> <pre>var url = root + "../action" + "?" + " ← password=1234"; var path = new String("../path");</pre> <p>Multiple variable names may be specified for each location. Use the "+" prefix to add additional rules to a location or the "-" prefix to remove a rule. A name without a prefix disable configuration inherited from the upper location.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_JSVariable ['+' -'] <name> [<action> <pos>]</p> <p>name specifies the name of the variable whose assigned values must be encrypted. Use '\$' to enable automatic encryption of all values within any variable assignment. Automatic encryption requires the following attributes to recognize a string as an URL: the string must match the regular expression defined by RF_UE_JSCharset.</p> <p>action can either be 'absolute', 'relative' or 'query' and defines how to encrypt the string: 'absolute' creates an absolute URL using the URL of the current request (this is the default) while 'relative' does not modify the URL (except escaping special characters such as umlauts or spaces). 'query' is used if the string is not a path but a query component of an URL (the rule defined by RF_UE_EncodeQuery is used if the query string consists of a name/value pair).</p> <p>pos defines the position within the variable assignment.</p> <p>Example (see JavaScript example above): RF_UE_JSVariable +url relative 2 RF_UE_JSVariable +url query 4 RF_UE_JSVariable +path absolute 2</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_JSCharset	Location	<p>Defines a regular expression a string must match in order to be recognizes as an URL when using JavaScript automatic encryption mode (defined by RF_UE_JSFunction or RF_UE_JSVariable). This char set is used to detect a path pattern. Only one pattern may be defined per location.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_JSCharset <regular expression></p> <p>Inheritance: Inherited to sub-locations.</p> <p>Default: <code>^(http/)[a-zA-Z0-9\.\?#=:@;&%_\-]*\$</code></p>
RF_UE_JSQueryCharset	Location	<p>Defines a regular expression a string must match in order to be recognizes as an URL when using JavaScript automatic encryption mode (defined by RF_UE_JSFunction or RF_UE_JSVariable). This char set is used to detect a path query only. Only one pattern may be defined per location.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_JSQueryCharset <regular expression></p> <p>Inheritance: A sub location having any RF_UE_* directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.</p> <p>Default: no pattern is defined.</p> <p>Example:</p>
RF_UE_UrlExclPattern	Location	<p>Defines a regular expression a URL (within the processed data stream) must match in order to be excluded from the URL encryption. An excluded URL is "normalized" to an absolute path. The pattern match is applied to the normalized path. Multiple patterns may be defined per location.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UR_UrlExclPattern <regular expression></p> <p>Inheritance: No configuration merge to sub location. A sub location having any RF_UE_* directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>RF_UE_UrlExclPattern "/images/([a-zA-Z].*[1-9].*)\.(jpg gif)\$"</pre> <p>This excludes all URLs in the stream matching '/images/*.jpg' and '/images/*.gif').</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_DecodeHTML	Location	<p>HTML decodes URL containing "special characters" before URL encryption.</p> <p>Please note that HTML responses sent to the client are generally forced to be HTML encoded otherwise special characters might be interpreted by the browser and could result in wrong URLs being used.</p> <p>Sample: The HTML-Response "<code>... </code>" would be interpreted by the browser as "<code>... </code>".</p> <p>To become a correct Link, the application must HTML encode this kind of data: "<code></code>".</p> <p>The encrypted URL must contain the decoded HTML (which differs from what is being sent to the client) otherwise the additional '&' would also lead to additional parameters being sent back to the application. By turning 'on' this directive, the SES handles this special browser behavior.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_DecodeHTML "On" "Off" Inheritance: Inherited to sub-locations. Default: off</p>
RF_UE_DecodeBody	Location	<p>Enables decryption of query values within the HTTP request body. This directive is used in conjunction with RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm directive. See RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm about activation of HTML form data encryption.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_DecodeBody "On" "Off" Default: off</p>
RF_ChangeReqHeader	Location	<p>Replaces a 'search' pattern (literal string) by the 'replace' pattern (literal string or environment variable defined using SetEnvIf when the replace pattern is prefixed by '\$') in the defined HTTP request header. Per default only the first occurrence is replace. The optional parameter "greedy" defines that all occurrences should be replaced. Supports only one rule per header.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_ChangeReqHeader <header name> <search> <replace> [greedy]</p> <p>Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace	Location	Replaces the 'header' by the defined 'value' in the request headers. The value may specify an environment variable defined using SetEnvIf if the value is prefixed by a '\$'. The header is added to the request if it does not exist. Syntax: RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace <header> <value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeIfReqHeaderReplace	Location	Sets a HTTP request header if the specified environment variable matches the defined regular expression. The directive recognizes the occurrences of \$1..\$9 within the value argument and replaces them by the sub expressions of the defined regex pattern. Syntax: RF_ChangeIfReqHeaderReplace <variable> <regex> [!]<header>=<value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeReqFixHeader	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeader but applied later in the request processing (Apache fixup handler).
RF_ChangeReqFixHeaderReplace	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace but applied later in the request processing (Apache fixup handler).
RF_ChangeResHeader	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeader but applied to a response header.
RF_ChangeResHeaderReplace	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace but applied to a response header.
RF_ChangeResHeaderAdd	Location	Adds the 'header' with the defined 'value' to the response headers. The value may be specified with an environment variable using SetEnvIf (environment variable is prefixed by '\$'). The directive is processed before the RF_ChangeResHeader, RF_ChangeResHeaderReplace, RF_SetEnvIfResHeader, and RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace. Syntax: RF_ChangeResHeaderAdd <header> <value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SetEnvIfResHeader	Location	<p>Creates an environment variable if the specified response header value matches the defined argument. Works similar to Apache's <code>SetEnvIf</code> directive but is applied to the response headers. The directive recognizes the occurrences of <code>\$1..\$9</code> within the header value and replaces them by the sub expressions of the defined regex pattern.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SetEnvIfResHeader <header> <regex> [!]<variable>[=<value>]</code></p> <p>Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any <code>RF_Change*</code> or <code>RF_SetEnvIfResHeader</code> directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.</p>
RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace	Location	<p>Sets a HTTP response header if the specified environment variable matches the defined regular expression. The directive recognizes the occurrences of <code>\$1..\$9</code> within the value argument and replaces them by the sub expressions of the defined regex pattern. Works contrariwise to <code>RF_SetEnvIfResHeader</code>.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace <variable> <regex> [!]<header>=<value></code></p> <p>Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any <code>RF_Change*</code> or <code>RF_SetEnvIf*Header</code> directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.</p>
RF_FakeServerName	Virtual Server	<p>The server name returned to the client in the HTTP header "Server". If not defined, the default "Secure Entry Server" is used. With the value <code>%OFF</code> the header "Server" coming from the back-end (SRM, respectively) remains unchanged.</p> <p>Inheritance: A configured server name in the global scope is merged into the scope of virtual hosts. With the value <code>%DEFAULT</code> the server name in a virtual host can be reset to the default server name.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_FakeServerName <name></code></p>
RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny	Virtual Server	<p>Restrict HTTP headers for the client. Headers denied by this directive are removed from the incoming request.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny (["+" "-"] <header>)*</code></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the deny input header list. '+' and '-' adds and removes headers. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header name a new list is started (no merge).</p> <p>Example: <code>RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny +HSP_FOO_-HSP_BAR_ HSP_HELLO_</code></p> <p>Default: <code>+HSP +SSL +ClientCorrelator +ConnectionCorrelator +HTTPS</code></p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow	Virtual Server	Explicit allow HTTP headers for virtual server. This directive overloads a Virtual Server RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny directive. Syntax: RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow ([["+"] -"] <header>)* Inheritance: Merges the allow input header list. '+' and '-' adds and removes headers. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header name a new list is started (no merge). Example: RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow +HSP_FOO_-HSP_BAR_ HSP_HELLO_ Default: +HSP_TS
RF_LocationRequestHeaderDeny	Location	The same behavior like RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny . This directive overloads the RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow directive.
RF_LocationRequestHeaderAllow	Location	The same behavior like RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow . This directive can not overload the RF_ServerRequestHeaderDeny directive, only the RF_LocationRequestHeaderDeny directive.
RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny	Virtual Server	Restrict HTTP headers from the application server back to client. Headers denied by this directive are removed from the outgoing request. Syntax: RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny ([["+"] -"] <header>)* Inheritance: Merges the deny output header list. '+' and '-' adds and removes headers. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header name a new list is started (no merge). Example: RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny +HSP_FOO_-HSP_BAR_ HSP_HELLO_ Default: +HSP_SERVER_LOAD_INFO +HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES
RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow	Virtual Server	Explicit allow HTTP headers from the application server back to client. This directive overloads a Virtual Server RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny directive. Syntax: RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow ([["+"] -"] <header>)* Inheritance: Merges the allow output header list. '+' and '-' adds and removes headers. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header name a new list is started (no merge). Example: RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow +HSP_FOO_-HSP_BAR_ HSP_HELLO_ Default: +HSP_TS
RF_LocationResponseHeaderDeny	Location	Note: The same behavior like RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny . This directive overloads the RF_ServerRequestHeaderAllow directive.
RF_LocationResponseHeaderAllow	Location	Note: The same behavior like RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow . This directive can not overload the RF_ServerResponseHeaderDeny directive only the RF_LocationResponseHeaderDeny directive.



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny	Virtual Server	<p>Restrict HTTP header entries from client. Header entries denied by this directive are removed from the incoming request.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny <header> (["+" "-"] <entry>)*</p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the deny input header entry list. '+' and '-' adds and removes header entries. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header entry name a new list is started (no merge)</p> <p>Example: RF_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny Accept-Encoding +gzip +compress</p>
RF_ServerResponseHeaderEntryDeny	Virtual Server	<p>Restrict HTTP header entries from the application server back to client. Header entries denied by this directive are removed from the incoming request.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_ServerResponseHeaderEntryDeny <header> (["+" "-"] <entry>)*</p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the deny input header entry list. '+' and '-' adds and removes header entries. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header entry name a new list is started (no merge)</p> <p>Example: RF_ServerResponseHeaderEntryDeny Accept-Encoding +gzip +compress</p>
RF_LocationRequestHeaderEntryDeny	Location	Note: The same behavior like RF_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny .
RF_LocationResponseHeaderEntryDeny	Location	Note: The same behavior like RF_ServerResponseHeaderEntryDeny .
RF_Param	Virtual Server	<p>This directive enable ("On") or disable ("Log", "Off") the module for this server.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_Param "On" "Off" "Log"</p> <p>Inheritance: Virtual server settings overwrite global settings.</p> <p>Example: RF_Param Log</p> <p>Default: Off</p>
RF_ParamGetAllow	Virtual Server	<p>This directive allows GET requests without parameters.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_ParamGetAllow "On" "Off"</p> <p>Inheritance: Virtual server settings overwrite global settings.</p> <p>Example: RF_ParamGetAllow Off</p> <p>Default: On</p>
RF_ContentTypeMap	Virtual Server	<p>This directive defines a new content-type based on an existing content-type. Existing content types are namely: application/x-www-form-urlencoded and multipart/form-data.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_ContentTypeMap <new content type> <existing content type></p> <p>Inheritance: Virtual server settings overwrite global settings.</p> <p>Example: RF_ContentTypeMap myOwn/ContentType</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_ParamByteRange	Location	This directive defines the allowed characters. Syntax: RF_ParamByteRange <start> <end> Inheritance: A child location overwrites its parent's location settings. Note: <start> must be lesser than <end> but not lesser 0, <end> must not be bigger than 255 Example: RF_ParamByteRange 32 128 Default: 0 255
RF_ParamWhitelist	Location	This directive defines the whitelist of the allowed parameters. If a parameter is not allowed a 403 Forbidden is sent by the server. Syntax: RF_ParamWhitelist <path> (<parameter> [\\\"=\\\" [<num> \"-\" <num>] <regex>])\)* Inheritance: A child location overwrites its parent's location settings. Example: RF_ParamWhitelist /a/b param1=[32-255]\\`hallo\$ Note: There must be no whitespaces in the parameter expression. Default: All parameter which are not in the whitelist are denied.
RF_ParamWhitelist_Test	Location	Note: Same syntax as RF_ParamWhitelist , but only logs the denied parameters and does not bloc them.
RF_Html_ContinueOnParseErr	Virtual Server	Defines whether to continue response processing on HTML parser error or not. "on" forces the continuation even an error occurs (unknown pattern). Syntax: RF_Html_ContinueOnParseErr on off Default is on
RF_Js_ContinueOnParseErr	Virtual Server	Defines whether to continue response processing on JavaScript parser error or not. "on" forces the continuation even an error occurs (unknown pattern). Syntax: RF_Js_ContinueOnParseErr on off Default is on
RF_Css_ContinueOnParseErr	Virtual Server	Defines whether to continue response processing on CSS parser error or not. "on" forces the continuation even an error occurs (unknown pattern). Syntax: RF_Css_ContinueOnParseErr on off Default is on
RF_SF_SoapFilter	Virtual Server	Activates SOAP message filtering for this server. Syntax: RF_SF_SoapFilter on off
RF_SF_TrustedSchema	Virtual Server	Defined trusted schemas (.xsd) used/referenced within application specific .wsdl files. Syntax: RF_SF_TrustedSchema <xsd file>
RF_SF_ResourceMapping	Virtual Server	Resources (for example Schema Files) imported from other Schema- or WSDL files by using <xsd:import schemaLocation="xy". . . > need local mapping to files available on the SES's filesystem. Syntax: RF_SF_ResourceMapping <location> <file> Import statements not mapped to local files result in the following error logged in the error_log: [error] Unable to resolve <location>. Please use RF_SF_ResourceMapping for local mapping



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SF_DefineApplication	Virtual Server	<p>Defines a Variable linked to an WSDL schema file that could be later on referenced in RF_SF_AllowService directives. The WSDL file will be verified against the WSDL schema specified in the RF_SF_WSDLSchemaFile directive to assure its integrity. For validation of SOAP actions and parameter names, in general both rpc and wrapped document style WSDL files are supported (unwrapped document style is not supported).</p> <p>The optional parameter <ext-schema-file> is for indicating an external xml schema that contains parameter info for a document (wrapped) style WSDL (only needed when that information is not in the WSDL itself).</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_DefineApplication <alias> <xml name space> <wsdl file> [<ext schema file>]</p> <p>Example: "RF_SF_DefineApplication APPL1 urn:SampleWebService /opt/tarsec/TSHSP/HttpsListener2/conf/SampleWebServices.wsdl /opt/tarsec/TSHSP/HttpsListener2/conf/ext/SampleWebServices.xsd"</p>
RF_SF_SoapValidator	Location	<p>Enables soap request validation for the location. Every POST request is validated (ignores content-type).</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_SoapValidator 'on' 'off' 'xml'</p> <p>Default is off. Log is currently not supported (same effect as off).</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_SF_SoapValidatorResponse	Location	<p>Enables soap response validation for the location. Every response is validated (ignores content-type).</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_SoapValidatorResponse 'on' 'off' 'xml'</p> <p>Default is off. Log is currently not supported (same effect as off).</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_SF_NoNsLocFile	Location	<p>Defines Schemas used for XML-Validation. Multiple Schemas may be defined within a location to match incoming XML-(POST-)data. Validation will be done in the defined sequence (ascending). If no Schema file matches the incoming data, HTTP RC 500 will be returned to the client, resp. 302 to 500 for response validation</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_NoNsLocFile <xml name space></p> <p>Default is none</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p>



Table 5: (continued)


Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SF_SoapVersion	Location	<p>Defines the allowed soap versions. You may specify multiple versions for a location.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SF_SoapVersion 'soap11' 'soap12'</code></p> <p>Default is none</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_SF_AllowService	Location	<p>Defines the allowed actions for an application name space defined by <code>RF_SF_DefineApplication</code>. Use '*' for the SOAP operation name in order to allow any operation within the name space.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SF_AllowService <alias> <operation></code></p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p> <p>Note: see <code>AC_AllowSoapMethod</code> directive about per user authorization settings.</p>
RF_SF_ReqParameterNameValidation	Location	<p>Enables parameter name validation. Only parameter names defined by the wsdl are allowed for a specific method if enabled. This directive MUST be used together with the "RF_SF_DefineApplication" and "RF_SF_AllowService" directive</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SF_ReqParameterNameValidation 'on' 'off'</code></p> <p>Default is off (any parameter name is allowed even it has not been defined by the wsdl).</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_SF_ExclContentDisp	Location	<p>Excludes specific Content-Dispositions (by "name"-attribute) in a Multipart request from (XML-)validation</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SF_ExclContentDisp <n></code></p> <p>Example: <code>RF_SF_ExclContentDisp integrity_customers"</code></p> <p>This excludes multipart with the (Header) Content-Disposition: form-data; name="integrity_customers"</p> <hr/> <p> Warning Use this with caution as incoming request headers may be faked and as such, the incoming data will not be validated !</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SF_ParameterPermit	Location	<p>Allows to define a set of whitelisted element or attribute nodes in a message. "name" defines the element or attribute (in XPath syntax) whose assigned value(s) must match the "regular expression". Use the "+" prefix to add additional elements/attributes to the set or the "-" prefix to remove it. Without a prefix, a new list is created for the corresponding location.</p> <p>Action "log" only logs the exception, while "deny" forces to return of the HTTP status code 403 (Forbidden) if the exception does not match.</p> <p>A whitelist is merged to sub locations.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_ParameterPermit [+ -]<name> [log deny] <regular expression></p> <p>Example: RF_SF_ParameterPermit /method/name deny "\^example.permittedMethod\\$"</p>
RF_SF_ParameterDeny	Location	<p>Counterpart to RF_SF_ParameterPermit which allows to define a set of blacklisted element or attribute nodes. The value of the defined element or attribute must not match the "regular expression".</p> <p>Action "log" only logs the prohibition, while "deny" forces to return of the HTTP status code 403 (Forbidden) if the prohibition applies.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_ParameterDeny [+ -]<name> [log deny] <regular expression></p> <p>Example: RF_SF_ParameterDeny /method/name deny "\^example.deniedMethod\\$"</p>
RF_SF_MaxRecursionLevel	Location	<p>Defines the maximum recursion of XML Elements in a message to prevent DOS attacks.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SF_MaxRecursionLevel <n></p> <p>Default is 40</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration is merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_HdrValidatorRule	Virtual Server or Location	<p>Defines a validation rule using regular expressions. The regular expression string may include other rules using variables surrounded by "\${" and "}".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_HdrValidatorRule <name> <regex_string></p> <p>Inheritance: Global per server configuration can be used within locations to build new rules or can be overwritten by local rules.</p> <p>A set of default rules are included with the HSP packages. Uses these rules (or a subset of) to enforce RFC compliance.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SrvReqHdrValidate	Virtual Server	<p>Defines rules and actions for incoming (request) headers on a per server basis.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_SrvReqHdrValidate <header name> <action[' ' <action->]> <rule></code></p> <p>header name name of the http header</p> <p>action action to take when the header does not fulfill the rule. Actions can be combined. Available actions are:</p> <p>log log the event to the error log</p> <p>bad deny access and send a HTTP 400 response to the client</p> <p>error deny access and send a HTTP 500 response to the client</p> <p>forbidden deny access and send a HTTP 403 response to the client</p> <p>remove deletes the header from the request</p> <p>declined the defined action is not executed, example: use the following action to test a configuration: "forbidden log declined". This action can NOT be used together with the "remove" action.</p> <p>rule a rule defined by the RF_HdrValidatorRule directive. Multiple rules may be specified per header. The header is only allowed if it matches all the rule pattern.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Server header validation is done before any location header validation. You can harden a server header validation with a location header validation. You can not weaken a server header validation with a location header validation.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_SrvResHdrValidate	Virtual Server	<p>Defines rules and actions for outgoing (response) headers on a per server basis.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_SrvResHdrValidate <header name> <action['' <action>]> <rule></p> <p>header name name of the http header</p> <p>action action to take when the header does not fulfill the rule. Actions can be combined. Available actions are:</p> <p>log log the event to the error log</p> <p>remove deletes the header from the response</p> <p>rule a rule defined by the RF_HdrValidatorRule directive. Multiple rules may be specified per header. The header is only allowed if it matches all the rule pattern.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Server header validation is done before any location header validation. You can harden a server header validation with a location header validation. You can not weaken a server header validation with a location header validation.</p>
RF_LocReqHdrValidate	Location	Same function as the directive RF_SrvReqHdrValidate but on a per location basis.
RF_HdrValidatorDebug	Virtual Server or Location	Iterates through all RF_HdrValidatorRule directives within the server configuration, resolves and compiles the rules. An error message is written to stderr when a rule can not be verified correctly. Use this command once when defining new rules before adding validation directives like RF_SrvReqHdrValidate or RF_SrvResHdrValidate .
RF_UE_MatchParser	Environment Variable	<p>This environment variable enables the match parser for URL encryption.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_MatchParser="[path] [query]"</p> <p>Example: SetEnvIf Content-Type "application/x-javascript" RF_UE_MatchParser=path</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_InlineMatchParser	Environment Variable	<p>This environment variable enables the inline match parser for URL encryption. With the value "match-parser-only" the JavaScript parser for inline JavaScripts is deactivated.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_InlineMatchParser=match-parser-only on Example: SetEnvIf Content-Type "text/html" RF_UE_InlineMatchparsre=match-parser-only</p>
RF_MatchParserRegex	Location	<p>Defines one or more pattern for URL encryption.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_MatchParserRegex "<regex>" Example: RF_MatchParserRegex "(\\[\\^*\\])"</p>
RF_MatchParserWhitelist	Location	<p>Defines a whitelist for the found patterns.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_MatchParserWhitelist "<regex>" Example: RF_MatchParserWhitelist "http://.*" "/"</p>
RF_MatchParserBlacklist	Location	<p>Defines a blacklist for the found patterns.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_MatchParserBlacklist "<regex>" Example: RF_MatchParserBlacklist "uEtTr.*\\\$~UuE"</p>
HGW_ClientRestrictionMaxRequestRate	Virtual Server	<p>Activate the ClientRestriction rules with the given number of requests per a given time. With this filter it is possible to limit the number of requests a client is allowed to make for a given time.</p> <p>There are two possible actions if the limit is reached either all requests after the limit get dopped and a message is written to the log or only a message is written to the log file.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ClientRestrictionMaxRequestRate <REQUESTS> <TIME> <ACTION></p> <p>REQUESTS The number of requests which are allowed within the given time frame for each client. The number must be >0</p> <p>TIME The time frame for the requests counter in seconds.</p> <p>ACTION The action to take if the requests limit is reached. The two possible values are DROP and LOG whereas LOG only writes a log entry every time a client reaches the limit. On the other side the DROP action drops all further traffic from the given client till the time frame is finished and the client will be logged.</p> <p>Example: HGW_ClientRestrictionMaxRequestRate 1000 60 DROP This example allows 1000 requests within a minute for each client. If a client requests more pages within one minute, surplus requests get dropped.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HGW_ClientRestrictionIdentityHeader	Virtual Server	<p>Define a header name that is used to identify a client. This is required if clients can not be identified by their IP address, e.g. when using a load balancer. If this directive is not set, clients are identified by IP address.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ClientRestrictionIdentityHeader <HEADER></p> <p>Example: HGW_ClientRestrictionIdentityHeader FAKEID</p> <p>This searches for a header with name FAKEID and uses its value to identify the corresponding client.</p>
HGW_ClientRestrictionExceptionRequestRate	Virtual Server	<p>This directive allows setting special rules for defined clients. This overwrites the values defined with the HGW_ClientRestrictionMaxRequestsRate.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ClientRestrictionExceptionRequestRate <ID> <REQUESTS> <ACTION></p> <p>ID</p> <p>The client id to use for the exception this has to be an exact match of the client id received.</p> <p>REQUESTS</p> <p>The number of requests which are allowed within the given time frame for each client. If this number is set to zero then there will not be a restriction for this client.</p> <p>ACTION</p> <p>The action to take if the requests limit is reached. The two possible values are DROP and LOG whereas LOG only writes a log entry every time a client reaches the limit. On the other side the DROP action drops all further traffic from the given client till the time frame is finished and the client will be logged</p> <p>Example: HGW_ClientRestrictionExceptionRequestRate 192.168.1.10 777 LOG</p> <p>With the given example directive the client "192.168.1.10" is allowed to access 777 times instead of the global defined value and if her reaches this limit the client will not be dropped instead only a log message will be written.</p>
<p>ICAP</p> <p>The ICAP filter module is explained in more detail in section "ICAP Request and Response Modification". Some additional directives are only available in the SRManager, see section "Table 26: SRManager - Request Filter Directives".</p>		



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
ICAP_Host	Location	<p>Defines the server name and port ("host:port") to send the ICAP request to. In connection with failover, several hosts can be defined by using this directive multiple times.</p> <p>Syntax: ICAP_Host REQMOD RESPMOD <host>:<port> <service></p> <p>Example: "REQMOD 127.0.0.1:4488 /av"</p> <p><i>Note: To enable ICAP the Environment Variable ICAP_REQMODE resp. ICAP_RESMOD must be set to "ON".</i></p> <p><i>Example: SetEnvIf Request_URI "/path/location" ICAP_REQMOD=ON</i></p>
ICAP_ConnectTimeOut	Location	<p>Within this time, a configured server must accept the connection. If it is a SSL connection, the socket must not be Idle more than the specified time during the SSL Handshake. If the socket for the SSL handshakes timeouts within this time, a OpenSSL syscall error is returned.</p> <p>Syntax: ICAP_ConnectTimeOut REQMOD RESPMOD <seconds></p> <p>Default value is 10 (seconds).</p>
ICAP_TimeOut	Location	<p>Specifies timeout for ICAP requests and responses.</p> <p>Syntax: ICAP_TimeOut REQMOD RESPMOD <seconds></p> <p>Default value is 120 (seconds).</p>
ICAP_EnableSSLServerCert	Location	<p>Use SSL (Version 3) when connecting to the server and ensure that the presented server certificate is signed by the configured Certification Authority ("CA=<PEMfile>"). Optionally, verify that the server certificate's common name corresponds to the configured values ("CN='servername']"). Multiple "CN='servername'" are supported.</p> <p>In order to allow any server certificate, configure the special value "ALLOW_ALL".</p> <p>Syntax: ICAP_EnableSSLServerCert REQMOD RESPMOD (<ca file>\ <cn>*) ALLOW_ALL*</p> <p>Example 1: REQMOD ALLOW_ALL</p> <p>Example 2: RESPMOD CA=/opt/allowed/ca1.PEM CN='devhost.org.com'</p> <p>Example 3: REQMOD CA=/opt/allowed/ca1.PEM CN='devhost.org.com' CN='other.org.com'</p>
ICAP_ClientCert	Location	<p>Use the configured client certificate and private key ("CERT=<PEMfile> PKEY=<PEMfile>") for SSL client authentication if requested by the server.</p> <p>Syntax: ICAP_ClientCert REQMOD RESPMOD CERT=<cert-file> PKEY=<private key file></p> <p>Example: REQMOD CERT=/opt/cert/client/client.PEM PKEY=/opt/pkey/client/clientkey.PEM</p> <p>The private key must not be password protected.</p>



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
ICAP_ErrorPage	Location	Set error pages to map ICAP errors to. Syntax: <code>ICAP_ErrorPage REQMOD RESPMOD <status-code> <path-to-error-page></code> Example: <code>REQMOD 500 /srm-error-pages/500.shtml</code>
ICAP_ReqActionIf	Location	This directive defines a conditional action based on and embedded http headers and environment variables for REQMOD. Syntax: <code>ICAP_ReqActionIf <conditions> <actions></code> [<info>] conditions: <code><element>"&&"<element></code> element: <code>icap.status icap.<header> icap.http.res.status icap.http.res.<header> icap.http.req.line icap.http.req.<header> <env-var>["=~" "!~" "==" "!="] <regex></code> actions: <code>log declined error bad forbidden ok [!]<env-var>[=<value>]</code> Example: <code>ICAP_ReqActionIf icap.status=~200&&icap.http.res.status=~403&&icap.http.res.x-virus==detected forbidden log "Virus detected"</code>
ICAP_ResActionIf	Location	This directive defines a conditional action based on ICAP and embedded http headers and environment variables for RESPMOD. Syntax: <code>ICAP_ResActionIf <conditions> <actions></code> [<info>] conditions: <code><element>"&&"<element></code> element: <code>icap.status icap.<header> icap.http.res.status icap.http.res.<header> icap.http.req.line icap.http.req.<header> <env-var>["=~" "!~" "==" "!="] <regex></code> actions: <code>log declined error bad forbidden ok [!]<env-var>[=<value>]</code> Example: <code>ICAP_ResActionIf icap.status=~200&&icap.http.res.status=~403&&icap.http.res.x-virus==detected forbidden log "Virus detected"</code>
ICAP_SMFileAndSize	Global	Optional directive that specifies the semaphore file path for shared memory. If defined, it is used e.g. for caching ICAP OPTIONS response headers (performance improvement). Should be located in the Surrender's "logs" directory. The file name is suffixed by the process id of the server main process. The memory size in bytes must be specified in brackets. See also section " Client Data Store Settings ". Example: <code>ICAP_SMFileAndSize /var/SRManager/logs/icap_shmht_1k(67108864)</code> Default size is 1024kB
ICAP_DefaultOptionsTTL	Location	This directive defines the Options-TTL to use if the ICAP server does not return an Options-TTL header. Syntax: <code>ICAP_DefaultOptionsTTL <seconds></code> Example: <code>ICAP_DefaultOptionsTTL 86400</code> Default value is 3600 seconds (1 hour)



Table 5: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
ICAP_HideHeader	Location	This directive defines a header not to send to the ICAP server if the given regex matches the header value. Syntax: ICAP_HideHeaderREQMOD RESPMOD <header> <regex> Example: ICAP_HideHeader RESPMOD referer .*
ICAP_FO_Enable	Location	This directive enables ICAP failover. Unless stickiness is defined with other directives, hosts are tried round robin and given a penalty count if they do not respond. Syntax: ICAP_FO_Enable REQMOD RESPMOD on off Example: ICAP_FO_Enable RESPMOD on
ICAP_FO_Penalty	Location	This directive defines the penalty count that is set on an unresponsive host (default is 10). Hosts with a penalty are skipped in round robin for the number of times set as penalty. Syntax: ICAP_FO_Penalty REQMOD RESPMOD <penalty> Example: ICAP_FO_Penalty RESPMOD 20
ICAP_FO_SoftSticky	Location	This directive defines the soft sticky host (first host has index 0). Requests go first to the soft sticky host unless it has a penalty. Syntax: ICAP_FO_SoftSticky REQMOD RESPMOD <host index> Example: ICAP_FO_SoftSticky REQMOD 2
ICAP_FO_SyncReqRespmod	Location	This directive defines that REQMOD and RESPMOD requests go to the failover host with the same index. Requires that the same number of ICAP hosts are defined for REQMOD and RESPMOD, as well as the same connect timeout, and that all other ICAP failover settings are identical for REQMOD and RESPMOD. Syntax: ICAP_FO_SyncReqRespmod on off Example: ICAP_FO_SynReqRespmod on
ICAP_FO_SMFileAndSize	Global	Specifies the semaphore file path for shared memory. Should be located in the Surrender's "logs" directory. The file name is suffixed by the process id of the server main process. The memory size in bytes must be specified in brackets. See also section " Client Data Store Settings ". To take effect a restart is needed. Graceful restart will not be sufficient to activate this setting. Example: ICAP_FO_SMFileAndSize /var/SRManager/logs/icap_fo_shmht_lk(67108864) Default size is 1024kB

3.4.3 Http(s)Listener - HTTP 1.1 Gateway



Table 6: Http(s)Listener- HTTP 1.1 Gateway Directives

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HGW_Host	Location	<p>Defines the hostname (or IP address) and port of the SRManager virtual host to which the incoming request should be passed.</p> <p>When using a hostname, the name must be the same as the value of the "ServerName" directive defined in the corresponding virtual host configuration of the SRManager.</p> <p>When using an IPv6 address, the address must be enclosed in square brackets.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Host <host>:<port> Example: "127.0.0.1:4488" Example: "[::1]:4488"</p>
HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme	Location	<p>Specifies whether the scheme of the location header on backend redirections is kept or not. Per default, the URI scheme is rewritten to the scheme of the received request.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme On Off Default: Off Example: HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme On</p>
HGW_RequestHeaders	Location	<p>A list of HTTP headers that are passed to the application server. Headers not in this list are stripped from the request. Entries starting with '%' are replaced with all headers defined for this alias. See directive "HGW_ShowAliases". Entries starting with '-' are removed from the list, entries prefixed with '+' are added.</p> <p>In addition, wildcards for header names can be specified, e.g. with "Foo*" all headers starting with the substring "Foo" are let through. A single star "*" allows to pass all headers to the back-end. In conjunction with wildcards single headers can be excluded with a preceding exclamation mark, e.g. !Foo2 ensures that the header Foo2 is withheld even though wildcards exists.</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration values are merged to sub-locations. '+' adds and '-' removes headers from the merged configuration. If any of the values are not prefixed by '+' or '-', the settings of the current location overrides the setting of the parent location.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_RequestHeaders ['+' '-'] (('%'<Alias> <Headers>['*'])* *) !<Header> Example: %HTTP11_std -Referer !UserLoginData +Foo*</p>
HGW_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny	Virtual Server	<p>Restrict HTTP header entries to application server. Header entries denied by this directive are removed from the incoming request.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny <header> (['+' '-'] <entry>)* Inheritance: Merges the deny input header entry list. '+' and '-' adds and removes header entries. If no '-' or '+' is preceding the header entry name a new list is started (no merge) Example: HGW_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny Accept-Encoding +gzip +compress</p>
HGW_LocationRequestHeaderEntryDeny	Location	<p>The same behavior like HGW_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny.</p>



Table 6: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HGW_Allow401	Location	A value of "On" disables the default behavior of mapping an HTTP response code of 401 (Not Authorized) from the server to the code 500 (Server Error). A value of "RC=<n>" also avoids a server error, but changes the response code to the value <n> (allowed range is 200..599). Example: "HGW_Allow401 RC=403"
HGW_AllowCustomStatusLine	Location	Sometimes, an application server uses a non standard HTTP response line with a response code in defined by RFC2616. Such a response line get replaces by a "500 Internal Server Error" response line by default. You may allow any response codes using this directive. Syntax: HGW_AllowCustomStatusLine 'on' 'off'
HGW_EnableSSLServerCert	Location	Not available in the HttpsListener
HGW_ClientCert	Location	Not available in the HttpsListener
HGW_SSLHeaders	Location	A list of (SES internal) SSL headers which are generated by the HttpsListener (Valid header names are listed in section "Sample Configuration Files") HTTPS headers not contained in this list will not be set. Aliases can be used, see directive "HGW_ShowAliases").
HGW_SSLFingerprintDigest	Location	Specifies the message-digest-algorithm the SSLFingerprint header will be computed with. For a list of supported algorithms, refer to the OpenSSL documentation or invoke the system command 'openssl list-message-digest-algorithms' Syntax: HGW_SSLFingerprintDigest md5 sha1 sha256 . . . Example: HGW_SSLFingerprintDigest sha1 Default: md5
HGW_ShowAliases	Global	Show all available header group alias definitions and exit. The following command prints all definitions to stdout: %> bin/httpdctl start -args -C HGW_ShowAliases
HGW_Strict100Continue	Location	"On" specifies, that the Http(s)Listener passes a HTTP "Expect: 100-continue" message to the server (SRManager) and does not send a "100 Continue" response the client itself. If "Off" has been specified, the Http(s)Listener answer by a "100 Continue" response itself and suppress the message from the SRManager. Default is "on".
HGW_OutConnectionExpiry	Location	Controls reuse of outgoing HTTP connections (HTTP Keep-Alive). Syntax: HGW_OutConnectionExpiry [timeout=<secs>] [ttl=<secs>] [maxrequests=<n>] timeout specifies the maximum time in seconds after which an idle outgoing conntion is reused. This value is the counter-part of the Apache Timeout directive. ttl specifies the life time of the connection. If the connect is older than this value, it is not reused for new requests. maxrequests specifies the maximum number of request to perform on a outgoing connection. Default values are: timeout=10 ttl=30 maxrequests=300



Table 6: (continued)



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HGW_DNSPolicy	Virtual Server	Controls DNS lookup policy. Syntax: HGW_DNSPolicy “Startup” “Request” For HttpsListener, this value should be left to the default (Startup). See SRManager commands for more details. Default is value is Startup
HGW_ConnectTimeOut	Location	Within this time a configured server must accept the connection. For SSL connections see the additional directive HGW_SSLConnectTimeOut. Syntax: HGW_ConnectTimeOut <seconds> If Failover is enabled, HGW may try to connect multiple servers within this time. See "6.16 Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration" for Details. Default value is 10 (seconds).
HGW_TimeOut	Location	Specifies timeout for requests and responses. Syntax: HGW_TimeOut <seconds> Depending on failover settings, the request may be retried on a different server when this time-out is reached. See "6.16 Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration" for Details. Overrides the Apache "Timeout" directive. Default value: Value set by "Timeout" directive.
HGW_RequestBodyBuffer	Location	Sets the buffer size for forwarding request bodies from client to application servers. Syntax: HGW_RequestBodyBuffer <bytes> For HttpsListener, this value should be left to the default. Default value is 8192 (i.e. 8 KB). Maximum allowed value is 209715200 (i.e. 200 MB). Caution  When increasing the maximum allowed request body buffer size keep in mind that the request body will be stored in memory during processing the request. Values larger than 1048576 (1 MB) are not recommended.
HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer	Location	Sets the buffer size for forwarding response bodies from application servers to client. Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer <bytes> For HttpsListener, this value should be left to the default. Default value is 8192 (i.e. 8 KB). Maximum allowed value is 52428800 (i.e. 50 MB). Caution  When increasing the maximum allowed response body buffer size keep in mind that the response body will be stored in memory during processing the request. Values larger than 1048576 (1 MB) are not recommended.



Table 6: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush	Location	Forces immediate data flush when the HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer bytes have been received. Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush on off Default is off, the Apache default (SendBufferSize) buffer size is used to determine when the data is sent to the client.
HGW_TransparentContentType	Location	Sets the HSP to content transparent mode handling. If an application server does not set a Content-Type the default behavior is that the apache does set a configured Content-Type. With this directive the apache does also not set a Content-Type Syntax: HGW_TransparentContentType "On" "Off" Default is Off
HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking	Location	If this directive is set to "on", HSP reads the response from the application server in non-blocking mode. This directive is required for OAW application integration. This directive only makes sense in combination with "HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush on". Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off" Default is Off
HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking	Location	If this directive is set to "on", HSP reads the request from the client in non-blocking mode and will send it immediately to the application server. Syntax: HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off" Default is Off
HGW_ChunkedBuffering	Location	If this directive is set to "off", HSP does not cache the received data from the application but will send it immediately to the client. Buffering is required if using AAI and body data is needed. The default buffer size is 8192 Bytes. Syntax: HGW_ChunkedBuffering Off Default is On

3.4.4 Http(s)Listener - SSL Gateway

Table 7: [Http\(s\)Listener - SSL Gateway](#)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
SGW_Host	Virtual Server	Enables SSL Gateway by defining the hostname (or IP address) and port of the SRManager virtual host where the incoming SSL traffic should be streamed to. When using an IPv6 address, the address must be enclosed in square brackets. Syntax: SGW_Host <host>:<port> Example: "127.0.0.1:4488" Example: "[::1]:4488" Default: No default
SGW_ConnectTimeOut	Location	Within this time, a configured server must accept the connection. Syntax: SGW_ConnectTimeOut <seconds> If Fail-Over is enabled, HGW may try to connect multiple servers within this time. See "6.16 Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration" for Details. Default value is 10 (seconds).



Table 7: (continued)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
SGW_TimeOut	Virtual Server	Specifies idle timeout for the SGW connection. Syntax: SGW_TimeOut <seconds> OFF Default value: 3600 seconds
SGW_FinalTimeOut	Virtual Server	Specifies the overall timeout for the SGW connection. If set to 0 means no final timeout. Syntax: SGW_FinalTimeOut <seconds> Default on final timeout is set
SGW_SSLServerCert	Virtual Server	Ensure that the presented server certificate is signed by the configured Certification Authority ("CA=<PEMfile>"). In order to allow any server certificate, configure the special value "ALLOW_ALL". Syntax: SGW_SSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL CA=<PEMfile> Examples: "ALLOW_ALL", "CA=/opt/allowed/ca1.PEM" Default: is ALLOW_ALL

3.4.5 Http(s)Listener - RPC(SSL Gateway)

Table 8: [Http\(s\)Listener - RPC\(SSL Gateway\)](#)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
RPC_Activate	Virtual Server	Activates RPC protocol detection over SSL Gateway. Syntax: RPC_Activate on off Example: "on" Default: off

3.4.6 Http(s)Listener - Lua (SSL Gateway)



Table 9: [Http\(s\)Listener - SSL Gateway](#)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
LGW_LuaScript	Virtual Server	<p>This directive enables a lua script on specified place. With these scripts you can write an own protocol handler in Lua. This is useful, if i.e. citrix protocol do have changes, which our stational implementation can not handle.</p> <p>Syntax: LGW_LuaScript <i>Pre</i> <i>Resolve</i> <i>Post</i> <script-path></p> <p>Pre Only client connections is build up</p> <p>Resolve The Lua script must return a host:port string. If "SGW_Host \$HOST" is configured, the returned host:port ist the server host we then connect to.</p> <p>Post Client and server connection are established. Default is no Lua script at all.</p>

3.4.7 Http(s)Listener - Denial of Service (DoS) Prevention

Table 10: Http(s)Listener- Denial of service (DoS) prevention Directives

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_DosActivate	Server	<p>Possibility to deactivate/activate DoS protection.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_DosActivate on off Default is on</p>
HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShort	Server	<p>Reduces the keep-alive timeout of connections to <n> seconds once server (connection) load passes HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShortThreshold %.</p> <p>By setting shorter keep-alive timeouts, server connection resources are freed earlier and server overload risk is reduced.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShort <n> Example: "HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShort 5" Default timeout for keep-alive when system in under load is 3 seconds.</p>
HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShortThreshold	Server	<p>Threshold to be reached by system connection load to enable HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShort.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShortThreshold <n> Example: "HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShortThreshold 75" Default threshold to set keep-alive timeout to HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShort is 70%.</p> <p>Note: Some Microsoft Internet Explorers need a keep-alive timeout of at least 65 seconds to work 'properly'. Therefore, for affected IEs, HSP_KeepAliveTimeoutShortThreshold could be set to the same value as HSP_KeepAliveOffThreshold using the Apache BrowserMatch directive.</p>
HSP_KeepAliveOffThreshold	Server	<p>Threshold to be reached by system connection load to disable keep-alive on client connections.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_KeepAliveOffThreshold <n> Example: "HSP_KeepAliveOffThreshold 90" Default threshold to disable keep-alive is 85%.</p>



Table 10: (continued)

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
HSP_WebSocketLoadLimit	Location	Limitation of connections used for web sockets. Connection upgrades to web sockets will be refused with an <i>Internal Server Error 500</i> if the number of open web sockets have reached the configured limit. Limit is the percentage (1..100) of the total available server connections. Syntax: HSP_WebSocketLoadLimit <percentage> Default is 70 percent for WebSocket locations, otherwise, the directive is not set.
ProxyWebsocketIdleTimeout	Global, Virtual Server	Imposes a maximum amount of time (in seconds) for the tunnel to be left open while idle. Syntax: ProxyWebsocketIdleTimeout <s> Per default no timeout is set.

3.4.8 Http(s)Listener - Request Limitations

All QS_* directives require mod_qos, a DSO module which must be loaded using the LoadModule directive, see "[Table 12: Standard Apache modules](#)".

Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
Request Level Control These directives are used to limit concurrent requests with a specific pattern.		
QS_LocRequestLimitMatch	Virtual Server	Defines the number of concurrent requests for the specified request pattern (applied to the unparsed uri). Rule with the lowest number of allowed concurrent connection has the highest priority if multiple expressions match the request. Syntax: QS_LocRequestLimitMatch <regex> <number> By default, no limitations are active for locations.
QS_LocRequestPerSecLimitMatch	Virtual Server	Defines the allowed number of requests per second to the URI (path and query) pattern. Requests are limited by adding a delay to each requests (linear). This directive should be used in conjunction with QS_LocRequestLimitMatch only. Syntax: QS_LocRequestPerSecLimitMatch <regex> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_LocKBytesPerSecLimitMatch	Virtual Server	Defines the allowed download bandwidth to the location matching the defined URI (path and query) pattern. Responses are slowed by adding a delay to each response (non-linear, bigger files get longer delay than smaller ones). This directive should be used in conjunction with QS_LocRequestLimitMatch only. Syntax: QS_LocKBytesPerSecLimitMatch <regex> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_LocRequestLimit	Virtual Server	Defines the number of concurrent requests for the specified location (applied to the parsed path). Has lower priority than QS_LocRequestLimitMatch. Syntax: QS_LocRequestLimit <location> <number> By default, no limitations are active for locations.



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_LocRequestPerSecLimit	Virtual Server	Defines the allowed number of requests per second to a location. The maximum number of requests is limited by adding a delay to each request (linear, each request gets the same delay). This directive should be used in conjunction with QS_LocRequestLimit only. Has lower priority than QS_LocRequestPerSecLimitMatch. Syntax: QS_LocRequestPerSecLimit <location> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_LockBytesPerSecLimit	Virtual Server	Throttles the download bandwidth to the defined kbytes per second. Responses are slowed by adding a delay to each response (non-linear, bigger files get longer delay than smaller ones). This directive should be used in conjunction with QS_LocRequestLimit only. Has lower priority than QS_LockBytesPerSecLimitMatch. Syntax: QS_LockBytesPerSecLimit <location> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_CondLocRequestLimitMatch	Virtual Server	Rule works similar to QS_LocRequestLimitMatch but it is only enforced for requests whose QS_Cond variable matches the specified condition (regular expression). Syntax: QS_CondLocRequestLimitMatch <regex> <number> <condition> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_ErrorPage	Virtual Server	Defines an error page to be returned when a request is denied. Syntax: QS_ErrorPage <url>
High Priority Requests		
Additional directives are used to identify VIP's (very important persons) and to control the session life time and its cookie format.		
QS_VipHeaderName	Virtual Server	Defines a HTTP response header which marks a user as a VIP. mod_qos creates a session for this user by setting a cookie. Whenever an application handler sets this response header, the user gets preferred access any location. Tests Optionally its value against the provided regular expression. Specify the action 'drop' if you want mod_qos to remove this control header from the HTTP response. Syntax: QS_VipHeaderName <header name>[=<regex>] [drop]
QS_VipIPHeaderName	Virtual Server	Defines a HTTP response header which marks a client source IP address as a VIP. Tests Optionally its value against the provided regular expression. Specify the action 'drop' if you want mod_qos to remove this control header from the HTTP response. QS_VipIPHeaderName <header name>[=<regex>] [drop]
QS_SessionTimeout	Virtual Server	Defines the session life time for a VIP. Syntax: QS_SessionTimeout <seconds> Default are 3600 seconds.
QS_SessionCookieName	Virtual Server	Defines a custom cookie name. Syntax: QS_SessionCookieName <name> Default is MODQOS.
QS_SessionCookiePath	Virtual Server	Defines a the cookie path. Syntax: QS_SessionCookiePath <path> Default is "/".
QS_SessionKey	Virtual Server	Secret key used for cookie encryption. Used when using the same session cookie for multiple web servers (load balancing) or sessions should survive a server restart. Syntax: QS_SessionKey <string> By default, a random key is used which changes every server restart.



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_VipRequest	Environment Variable	This is an environment variable which disables the per location restrictions for this request. Requires the definition of a VIP header using the QS_VipHeaderName directive (this activates VIP verification). However, such an event does not create a VIP session. The user has the VIP status only for a single request (does not affect the QS_ClientPrefer directive). You may use the standard Apache module mod_setenvif or the QS_SetEnvIf* directives to set this variable.
Events		
An event may be any request attribute which can be represented by an environment variable. Such variables may be set by mod_setenvif or by other Apache modules. The following directives are used to limit the number of events.		
QS_EventRequestLimit	Virtual Server	Defines the number of concurrent events. Directive works similar to QS_LocRequestLimit but counting the requests having the same environment variable set rather than having the same URL pattern. Ignores VIP privileges normally but you may evaluate the QS_VipRequest variable, e.g. by using QS_SetEnvIf. Syntax: QS_EventRequestLimit <variable> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_EventPerSecLimit	Virtual Server	Defines how often requests may have the defined environment variable (literal string) set. It measures the occurrence of the defined environment variable on a request per seconds level and tries to limit this occurrence to the defined number. It works similar as QS_LocRequestPerSecLimit does but counts only the requests having the specified variable set (or not set if the variable name is prefixed by a "!"). Ignores VIP privileges. Syntax: QS_EventPerSecLimit [!]<variable> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_EventKBytesPerSecLimit	Virtual Server	Throttles the download bandwidth of all requests having the defined variable set to the defined kbytes per second. Responses are slowed by adding a delay to each response (non-linear, bigger files get longer delay than smaller ones). By default, no limitation is active. This directive should be used in conjunction with QS_EventRequestLimit only (you must use the same variable name for both directives). QS_EventKBytesPerSecLimit [!]<env-variable> <number> By default, no limitation is active.
QS_SetEnvIf	Virtual Server	Sets the "variable=value" (literal string) if variable1 (literal string) AND variable2 (literal string) are set in the request environment variable list. This is used to combine multiple variables to a new event type. Syntax: QS_SetEnvIf [!]<variable1> [!]<variable2> <variable=value>
QS_SetEnv	Virtual Server	Sets the defined variable with the value where the value string may contain other environment variables surrounded by "\${" and "}". The variable is only set if all defined variables within the value have been resolved. QS_SetEnv <env-variable> <value>
QS_SetEnvIfQuery	Virtual Server	Directive works quite similar to the SetEnvIf directive of the Apache module mod_setenvif but the specified regex is applied against the query string portion of the request line. Syntax: QS_SetEnvIfQuery <regex> [!]<variable> [=value]



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_SetEnvIfParp	Virtual Server	Directive matches the request URL query and the HTTP request message body data as well (application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/form-data, and multipart/mixed) and sets the defined process variable (quite similar to the QS_SetEnvIfQuery directive). The directive recognizes the occurrences of \$1..\$9 within value and replaces them by the subexpressions of the defined regex pattern. Syntax: QS_SetEnvIfParp <regex> [!]<env-variable>[=<value>]
QS_SetEnvIfBody	Virtual Server	Directive matching the any body pattern. Specify the content types to process using the directive PARP_BodyData and enable body parsing using the SetEnvIf <pattern> "parp" directive. The directive recognizes the occurrence of \$1 within the variable value and replaces it by the subexpressions of the defined regex pattern. Syntax: QS_SetEnvIfBody <regex> [!]<env-variable>[=<value>]
QS_SetEnvStatus	Virtual Server	Sets the defined variable in the request environment if the HTTP response status code matches the defined value. This may be used in conjunction with the QS_ClientEventBlockCount directive. Syntax: QS_SetEnvStatus <code> <variable>
QS_SetReqHeader	Virtual Server	Sets the defined HTTP request header to the request if the specified environment variable is set. QS_SetReqHeader <header name> <env-variable>
QS_SetEnvResBody	Location	Adds the defined environment variable (e.g. QS_Block) if the response body contains the defined literal string. Used on a per location level. Syntax: QS_SetEnvResBody <string> <variable>
QS_SetEnvResHeader	Virtual Server	Adds the defined HTTP response header to the request environment variables. Deletes the specified header if the action 'drop' has been specified. Syntax: QS_SetEnvResHeader <header name> [drop]
QS_SetEnvResHeaderMatch	Virtual Server	Adds the defined HTTP response header to the request environment variables if the specified regular expression (pcre not case sensitive) matches the header value. Syntax: QS_SetEnvResHeaderMatch <header name> <regex>
QS_KeepAliveTimeout	Environment Variable	This is an environment variable. Applies dynamic connection keep-alive settings overriding the Apache KeepAliveTimeout directive settings. It may be set using the SetEnvIf directive, e.g. for a BrowserMatch.
Connection Level Control		
These directives control server access on a per server (TCP connection) level.		
QS_SrvMaxConnPerIP	Virtual Server	Defines the maximum number of connections per source IP address. Syntax: QS_SrvMaxConnPerIP <number>



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_SrvRequestRate	Global	<p>Defines the minimum upload/download throughput a client must generate (the bytes send/received by the client per seconds). This bandwidth is measured while receiving request data (request line, header fields, or body). The client connection get closed if the client does not fulfill this required minimal data rate and the IP address of the causing client get marked in order to be handled with low priority (see the QS_ClientPrefer directive). The "max bytes per second" activates dynamic minimum throughput control: The required minimal throughput is increased in parallel to the number of concurrent clients sending/receiving data. The "max bytes per second" setting is reached when the number of sending/receiving clients is equal to the MaxClients setting. No limitation is set by default.</p> <p>Syntax: QS_SrvRequestRate <bytes/sec> [<max bytes per second>]</p> <p>No limitation is set by default.</p>
QS_SrvMinDataRate	Global	<p>Same as QS_SrvRequestRate but applied to the upload and download stream.</p>
QS_SrvDataRateOff	Virtual Server	<p>Disables the enforcement of QS_SrvRequestRate and QS_SrvMinDataRate for a virtual host. Used for non HTTP listener, e.g. ICA gateway.</p> <p>Syntax: QS_SrvMinDataRate</p>
QS_SrvMaxConnExcludeIP	Virtual Server	<p>Defines an IP address or address range to be excluded from connection level control restrictions. An address range must end with a ".".</p> <p>Syntax: QS_SrvMaxConnExcludeIP <address></p>
QS_ClientEntries	Global	<p>Defines the number of individual clients managed by mod_qos. Default are 50'000 concurrent IP addresses. Each client requires about 44 bytes of shared memory on a 32bit system or 88 bytes on a 64bit system respectively</p> <p>Syntax: QS_ClientEntries <number></p>
QS_ClientEventRequestLimit	Global	<p>Defines the allowed number of concurrent requests coming from the same client source IP address having the QS_EventRequest variable set.</p> <p>QS_ClientEventRequestLimit <number></p>
QS_ClientEventPerSecLimit	Global	<p>Defines how often a client may cause a QS_Event per second. Such events are requests having the QS_Event variable set, e.g. defined by mod_setenvif or using the QS_SetEnvIf directive.</p> <p>Syntax: QS_ClientEventPerSecLimit <number></p>
QS_ClientEventBlockCount	Global	<p>Defines the maximum number of QS_Block events allowed within the defined time (default are 600 seconds). Client IP is blocked when reaching this counter for the specified time (blocked at connection level).</p> <p>Syntax QS_ClientEventBlockCount <number> <seconds></p>
QS_ClientPrefer	Global	<p>Accepts only VIP clients when the server has less than 80% of free TCP connections. Use QS_VipHeaderName directive in order to identify VIP clients. Clients identified by QS_SrvMaxConnExcludeIP are excluded from connection restrictions. Filter is applied on connection level.</p> <p>Syntax: QS_ClientPrefer</p> <p>Default is off</p>



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_ClientTolerance	Global	Defines the allowed variation from a "normal" client (average). QS_ClientTolerance <percent> Default is 500.
Static Request Filter		
These filter are defined on a per location level and are used to restrict access to resources in general albeit of any server resource availability. New rules are added by defining a rule id prefixed by a `+. Rules are merged to sub locations. If a rule should not be active for a sub location, the very same rule must be defined but using a `-` prefix at the rule id. The filter rules are implemented as perl compatible regular expressions (pcre) and are applied to the decoded URL components (un-escaped characters, e.g. %20 is a space).		
QS_DenyRequestLine	Location	Generic request line (method, path, query, and protocol) filter used to deny access for requests matching the defined expression (pcre). The action taken for matching rules is either 'log' (access is granted but the rule match is logged) or 'deny' (access is denied). Syntax: QS_DenyRequestLine '+'-<id> 'log' deny' <pcre>
QS_DenyPath	Location	Generic abs_path (see RFC 2616 section 3.2.2) filter used to deny access for requests matching the defined expression (pcre). The action taken for matching rules is either 'log' (access is granted but the rule match is logged) or 'deny' (access is denied). Syntax: QS_DenyPath '+'-<id> 'log' deny' <pcre>
QS_DenyQuery	Location	Generic query (see RFC 2616 section 3.2.2) filter used to deny access for requests matching the defined expression (pcre). The action taken for matching rules is either 'log' (access is granted but the rule match is logged) or 'deny' (access is denied). Syntax: QS_DenyQuery '+'-<id> 'log' deny' <pcre>
QS_PermitUri	Location	Generic URI (path and query) filter implementing a request pattern whitelist. Only requests matching at least one QS_PermitUri pattern are allowed. If a QS_PermitUri pattern has been defined an the request does not match any rule, the request is denied albeit of any server resource availability (whitelist). All rules must define the same action. pcre is case sensitive. Use the qsfiler2 tool for automated rule generation. See also section " Static White-Lists ". Syntax: QS_PermitUri '+'-<id> 'log' deny' <pcre>
QS_InvalidUrlEncoding	Location	Enforces correct URL decoding in conjunction with the QS_DenyRequestLine, QS_DenyPath, and QS_DenyQuery directives. Default is "off" which means that incorrect encodings are ignored. Syntax: QS_InvalidUrlEncoding 'log' deny' off'
QS_DenyQueryBody	Location	Enables message body filtering in conjunction QS_DenyQuery directive. Body data filtering is applied to the request's message body of the following HTTP request content types: application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/form-data, and multipart/mixed. The body data is transformed into a request query and may be filtered using the QS_DenyQuery and QS_PermitUri directives. See also section " Static White-Lists ". Syntax: QS_DenyQueryBody 'on' off'
QS_PermitUriBody	Location	Enables message body filtering in conjunction QS_PermitUri directive. Body data filtering is applied to the request's message body of the following HTTP request content types: application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/form-data, and multipart/mixed. The body data is transformed into a request query and may be filtered using the QS_DenyQuery and QS_PermitUri directives. See also section " Static White-Lists ". Syntax: QS_DenyQueryBody 'on' off'



Directives (Listeners)	Validity	Description
QS_DenyInheritanceOff	Location	Disables inheritance of the filter patterns defined by the QS_Deny* and QS_Permit* directives for a location. Syntax: QS_DenyInheritanceOff
QS_LimitRequestBody	Virtual Server, Location, or Environment Variable	Maximum number of bytes allowed to be transferred to the server. May be defined as an environment variable using mod_setenvif. This allows request specific limitations (use the RC_MaxPostSize for the base limitation on a per location level). Syntax: QS_LimitRequestBod <bytes> When using mod_setenvif: Syntax SetEnvIf <attribute> <regex> QS_LimitRequestBody=<bytes> Example: SetEnvIf Content-Type application/x-www-form-urlencoded \\ QS_LimitRequestBody=1024

3.4.9 Http(s)Listener - Parameter Parser

Table 12: Parameter parser

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
Some modules (QS_*, RF_Form*, HGW_TranslateParameters* directives) processing the request body and request line query data used the generic parameter parser module mod_parp. This module features some built-in parameter which may be adjusted using the following directives.		
PARP_ExitOnError	Virtual Server	Defines the action to take in case of a parser error (parser can't process the input data). Default is a HTTP 500 server response but you may define the status code 200 to ignore errors. Syntax: PARP_ExitOnError <HTTP response code> Default: 500
PARP_BodyData	Virtual Server	Allows you to enable raw body processing for additional content types. Syntax: PARP_BodyData <content type>

3.4.10 Http(s)Listener - Debug Trace

Table 13: Http(s)Listener - Debug Directives

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
mod_analyze	Env Variable	To activate request line and headers tracing, this environment variable must be set as well as the trace log file (to define with DBG_TraceLog) . Example: SetEnvIf Request_URI "/test" mod_analyze
mod_analyze_body	Env Variable	If this environment variable is set request and response bodies are shown in the trace log. Example: SetEnvIf Request_URI "/test" mod_analyze_body
DBG_TraceAllowBody	Global Virtual Server	If this is set to "on" body recording is allowed. Note, in addition the environment variable mod_analyze_body must be set as well to activate body tracing. Syntax: DBG_TraceAllowBody on off Example: DBG_TraceAllowBody on



Table 13: (continued)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
DBG_TraceAllContentTypes	Global Virtual Server	In conjunction with body tracing this directive allows to enable all content types. Default is off, meaning that only bodies with content types "text/plain" and "text/html" are traced. Syntax: DBG_TraceAllContentTypes On Off
DBG_TraceLog	Virtual Server	This directive defines the file to write the captured data to. Syntax: DBG_TraceLog <path> Example: "/opt/usp/hsp/hts/logs/trace"
DBG_TraceControl	Global	Defines the parameter input file for DBG_TraceLog. If present, TraceLogging is enabled. Syntax: DBG_TraceControl <file> Control File do have multiple lines of rules: [path=<path>] [srcip=<ip>] [cc=<string>] [tracebody=on off] All elements in a line are optional and are AND combined. All lines are OR combined.
DBG_TraceCtlRefreshTime	Virtual Server	Sets the refresh time (in seconds) to update/re-read the TraceControl file. Syntax: DBG_TraceCtlRefreshTime <seconds>
DBG_TraceDropHeader	Virtual Server, Location	If this directive is activated, all headers and cookies which are silently dropped, are logged in the error log. Syntax: DBG_TraceDropHeader On Off Example <code>DBG_TraceDropHeader On</code> Default: "Off"

3.4.11 Http(s)Listener - GeoIP Location Blocking

Table 14: Http(s)Listener - GeoIP Location Blocking Directives

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
MaxMindDBEnable	Global, Virtual Server, Location	This directive enables or disables MaxMind DB lookup. Syntax: MaxMindDBEnable On Off Example: <code>MaxMindDBEnable On</code> Default: Off
MaxMindDBFile	Global, Virtual Server, Location	This directive associates a name placeholder with a MaxMind DB file on the disk. You may specify multiple databases, each with its own name. Syntax: MaxMindDBFile <name> <path> Example: <code>MaxMindDBFile DB /var/lib/usp/data/geoip/GeoIP.mmdb</code>
MaxMindDBEnv	Global, Virtual Server, Location	This directive assigns the lookup result to an environment variable. The first parameter after the directive is the environment variable. The second parameter is the name of the database followed by the path to the desired data using map keys or 0-based array indexes separated by /. Syntax: MaxMindDBEnv <varname> <name>/<path> Example: <code>MaxMindDBFile DB /var/lib/usp/data/geoip/GeoIP.mmdb</code> <code>MaxMindDBEnv GEOIP_CITY DB/city/names/en</code>



Table 14: (continued)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
GeoIP_Location_Blocking	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>This directive exists to enable or disable the request blocking based on the client's GeoIP location.</p> <p>Syntax: GeoIP_Location_Blocking On Off</p> <p>Example: GeoIP_Location_Blocking On</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Request blocking based on the client's GeoIP location can be overwritten by setting the subprocess environment variable <code>GeoIP_Location_Blocking_Override</code>. E.g. to prevent blocking of requests from local networks (as defined in RFC1918) you could add the following setting:</p> <pre>SetEnvIfExpr "-R '10.0.0.0/8' -R '172.16.0.0/12' -R '192.168.0.0/16' "</pre> <p><code>GeoIP_Location_Blocking_Override</code></p>
GeoIP_Location_Blacklist	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>This directive defines a list of <i>block values</i> that the specified variable <i>varname</i> is checked for. If the specified <i>varname</i> is set to one of the configured <i>block values</i>, the request will be blocked. The directive has no effect unless <code>GeoIP_Location_Blocking</code> is set to On in the same configuration context (global, virtual server, configuration).</p> <p>Syntax: GeoIP_Location_Blacklist <varname> <block value> [<block value> ...]</p> <p>This directive can not be combined with <code>GeoIP_Location_Whitelist</code> on the same configuration level. Setting this directive replaces any inherited settings of <code>GeoIP_Location_Blacklist</code> or <code>GeoIP_Location_Whitelist</code>.</p>
GeoIP_Location_Whitelist	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>This directive defines a list of <i>allow values</i> that the specified variable <i>varname</i> is checked for. The specified <i>varname</i> must be set to one of the configured <i>allow values</i>, otherwise the request will be blocked. The directive has no effect unless <code>GeoIP_Location_Blocking</code> is set to On in the same configuration context (global, virtual server, configuration).</p> <p>Syntax: GeoIP_Location_Whitelist <varname> <allow value> [<allow value> ...]</p> <p>This directive can not be combined with <code>GeoIP_Location_Blacklist</code> on the same configuration level. Setting this directive replaces any inherited settings of <code>GeoIP_Location_Blacklist</code> or <code>GeoIP_Location_Whitelist</code>.</p>
GeoIP_Location_BlockUnclassified	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>If this directive is set to On, a request will be blocked if the specified variable <i>varname</i> is unset (read: the GeoIP lookup yielded no result). This directive has no effect unless <code>GeoIP_Location_Blocking</code> is set to On in the same configuration context (global, virtual server, location).</p> <p>Syntax: GeoIP_Location_BlockUnclassified <varname> On Off</p> <p>Default: Off</p>
GeoIP_Anonymous_Blocking	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>This directive exists to enable or disable the anonymous IP blocking.</p> <p>Syntax: GeoIP_Anonymous_Blocking On Off</p> <p>Default: Off</p> <p>Request blocking based on the used anonymous IP information can be overwritten by setting the subprocess environment variable <code>GeoIP_Anonymous_Blocking_Override</code>. E.g. to prevent blocking of requests from local networks (as defined in RFC1918) you could add the following setting:</p> <pre>SetEnvIfExpr "-R '10.0.0.0/8' -R '172.16.0.0/12' -R '192.168.0.0/16' "</pre> <p><code>GeoIP_Anonymous_Blocking_Override</code></p>



Table 14: (continued)

Directives (Listener)	Validity	Description
GeoIP_Anonymous_Vars	Global, Virtual Server, Location	This directive defines the anonymization service types to block. If the specified <i>varname</i> is set to "1", the request will be blocked. This directive has no effect unless GeoIP_Anonymous_Blocking is set to On in the same configuration context (global, virtual server, location). Setting this directive replaces setting of GeoIP_Anonymous_Vars inherited from other configuration contexts. Syntax: GeoIP_Anonymous_Vars <varname> [<varname> ...]

3.5 SRManager Directives

3.5.1 Configuration Model

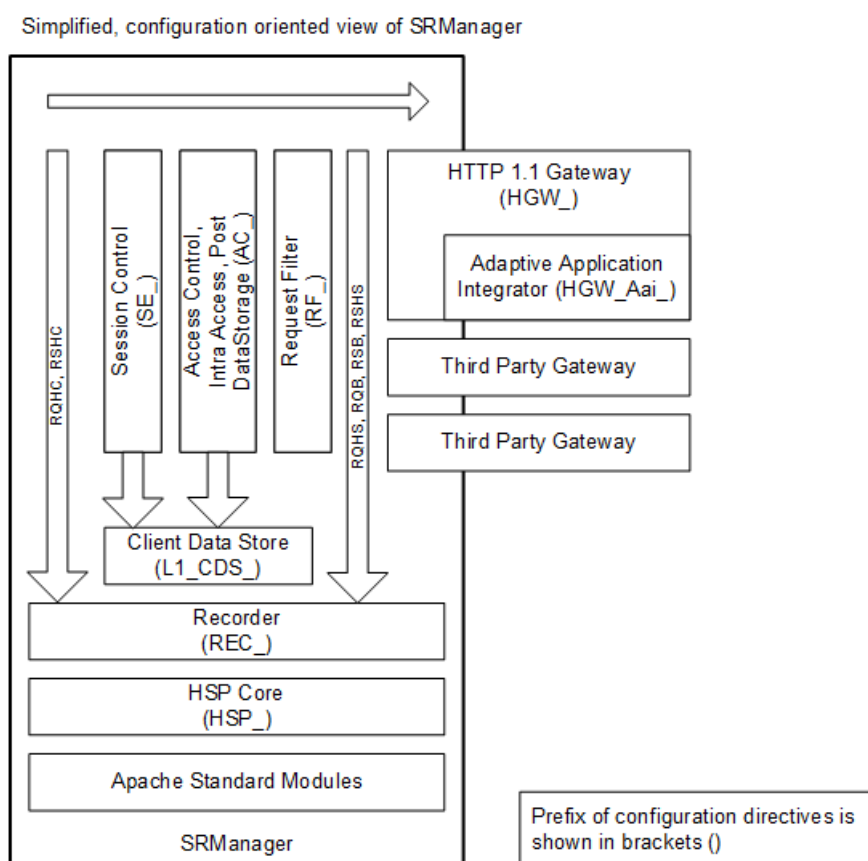


Figure 2: SRManager Configuration Model

3.5.2 SRManager - Core Directives



Table 15: SRManager - Core Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HSP_AppId	Location	Defines the application identifier which is used for recording and send to Login Services. Must not contain "\"&" or ":" Ensure to create a subdirectory in the directory defined by "REC_DestDir" for every "HSP_AppId" parameter value you have specified. Syntax: HSP_AppId <app_id> Example: HSP_AppId SampleApp Default is none.
HSP_HostIdPath	Global	Defines the file containing the HSP host identifier. The HSP identifier is used as a unique identifier for all components located on this host. This identifier is used for logging and correlation. Syntax: HSP_HostIdPath <pathname> Default is /etc/usp/hsp/hostid. Example: HSP_HostIdPath /etc/usp/hsp/hostid The system's host id (gethostid(3C)) is used as the default value if no such file is specified or has not been found.
HSP_InstanceId	Global	Defines the server instance identifier. The HSP identifier is used by all components as a unique instance identifier for request and client correlation. Syntax: HSP_InstanceId <string> Example: HSP_InstanceId srm Default is the parent process PID.
HSP_CorrelatorTEST	Global	If specified, an internal test is started before the component is started up. Should not be used in production. Syntax: HSP_CorrelatorTEST



Table 15: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HSP_TraceModules	Global	<p>Enables tracing for the specified modules and events.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HSP_TraceModules <module:flags> ...</code> where module can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>mod_secure_request_manager_gateway</code> <p>flags is a bitset consisting of the following flags:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0001 trace request/content handler entry• 0x0002 trace request/content handler exit• 0x0004 trace request/content details• 0x0008 trace module initialisation details• 0x0100 trace module name in each trace line• 0x200 show request headers for handler entry/exit• 0x400 show request URI for handler entry/exit• 0x800 show request URI, request arguments, current handler• 0x1000 show processed data <p>Do not use in productive systems. Example: <code>HSP_TraceModules</code> <code>mod_secure_request_manager_gateway:0cff</code></p> <hr/> <p>Note Tracing information is logged with log level "info", therefore the log level using directive "LogLevel" has to be set to "info" or "debug".</p>
HSP_TraceMagicValue	Global	<p>Set the flag which is set for all the modules if HSP_TraceMagic is set to <code>all</code>. The default value is <code>0xffff</code>. The usage of the flags is described within HSP_TraceModules.</p>



Table 15: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HSP_TraceMagic	Global	<p>Enables selective tracing of clients sending a cookie with a "magic" value. The magic value is used within the log files to identify the trace messages.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_TraceMagic <value> <value> must be one of the following values.</p> <p>off Disables the usage of trace magic (this is the default value)</p> <p>on Enable trace magic for all enabled HSP_TraceModules</p> <p>all With this trace magic enables all modules for tracing. See HSP_TraceMagicValue to configure the trace flags being set for the trace modules.</p> <p>The client needs to send a Cookie with the following format: HSP_TraceMagic=<magic> The value <magic> is used to identify the client within the log files.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Since this mechanism uses a cookie to track the client, the cookie HSP_TraceMagic must be configured with the SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies directive otherwise the cookie will be removed by the header filter.</p>
HSP_TraceOptions	Global	<p>Controls tracing.</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_TraceOptions <option>,<option>,... where option can be one of the following:</p> <p>stderr causes tracing message to be sent to stderr without prepending the apache header.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Using this directive may confuse log file adapters and monitoring tools since the log message do not use the apache format.</p>
HSP_ClientHost	Virtual Host	<p>This directive should be used in the listeners only, see there for details.</p>
HSP_Chroot	Global	<p>Implements a chrooted server. Does usually not require any configuration or environment changes (exceptions are configurations which open new files a runtime).</p> <p>Syntax: HSP_Chroot <path></p>



Table 15: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HSP_AbsoluteRedirects	Virtual Server	Controls generating absolute redirects. "Off" means, that relative (no host name) redirects are sent to the client, "on" means that absolute (including schema and host name) redirects are sent to the client, e.g. for the cookie check. Can also been set using the 'BrowserMatch' directive. Syntax: HSP_AbsoluteRedirects on off Default: off
HSP_DeflateRequestBody	Environment Variable	Activate input filter for deflating request body before any validator or body rewriter module Syntax: SetEnvIf <attribute> <regex> HSP_DeflateRequestBody Example: SetEnvIf Content-Encoding "gzip" HSP_DeflateRequestBody
HSP_AllowCache	Virtual Server	Allow mod cache functionality. Syntax: HSP_AllowCache on off Example: HSP_AllowCache on Default: off
HSP_RedirectMatch	Virtual Host	Directive works similar to RedirectMatch of mod_alias but allows to use additional variables within the destination URL. If the 'keep-query' flag is specified, query parameters from the original request are preserved also if query parameters are specified in the redirect target 'url'. Variables: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• \$SERVERNAME: represents the hostname within the HTTP request host header Syntax: HSP_RedirectMatch <regex> <url> [keep-query] Example: HSP_RedirectMatch /(.*) https://\$SERVERNAME/\$1 keep-query
HSP_SetEnvEncryptStatic	Virtual Host, Location	Encrypts the value of the environment variable 'env-var-in' using the static passphrase (no random) and stores its value in the 'env-var-out' variable. The encrypted value is base64 encoded. Syntax: HSP_SetEnvEncryptStatic <env-var-in> <env-var-out> <passphrase>
HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects	Virtual Host	When a redirect response is generated with a target location starting with "double slashes" (absolute URL without protocol identifier) HSP will reduce the target to a single slash if not disabled. Syntax: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects on off Default is "on".
HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude	Virtual Host	This directive allows to define target hosts for which redirect URLs without protocol identifier should be allowed without disabling the whole feature. A List of known-good-host can be specified as regex. Syntax: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude <regex> Example: HSP_DoubleSlashRedirects_Exclude "www.trusted.org"

3.5.3 SRManager - Request Filter Directives



Table 16: SRManager - Request Filter Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RC_MaxPostSize	Location	Maximum number of bytes allowed to be transferred to the server. Syntax: RC_MaxPostSize <bytes> Default is "49152"
RC_MaxResponseSize	Location	Maximum number of bytes allowed to be transferred to the server. Syntax: RC_MaxResponseSize <bytes> Default is no limitation
RF_ServerAllowMethod	Virtual Server	Restricts the allowed HTTP method for the virtual server. Methods not explicitly defined by this directive are denied and result in a "405 Method Not Allowed" response. Multiple methods may be specified for each server configuration. Use the "+" prefix to allow a method and the "-" prefix to deny the specified method. Syntax: RF_ServerAllowMethod "+" "-"<method> Example: RF_ServerAllowMethod -POST +PUT Default is "+GET +HEAD +POST"
RF_LocationAllowMethod	Location	Restricts the allowed HTTP method for the location. This directive takes only effect if it has explicitly defined for a location. This filter is applied after the method filter defined by RF_ServerAllowMethod . Methods denied by RF_ServerAllowMethod can't be allowed by this command. Methods excluded by this directive are denied and result in a "405 Method Not Allowed" response. Multiple methods may be specified for each server configuration. Use the "+" prefix to allow a method and the "-" prefix to deny the specified method. Syntax: RF_LocationAllowMethod "+" "-"<method> Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes method from the current location configuration. Example: RF_LocationAllowMethod -POST Default is "+GET +HEAD +POST"



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_EncodeUrl	Location	<p>Enables URL encryption for the defined location. Supported URL types are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relative and absolute URL without a scheme, e.g. <code>"/1.gif"</code> or <code>"/index.html"</code>. • Full qualified URL to http and https references including scheme and hostname (only if the hostname matches the <code>ServerName</code> of the <code>HttpsListener</code>), e.g. <code>"http://portal.yourdomain.ch/main"</code> • Reference to a handler, e.g. <code>"edit"</code> <p>URL encryption is applied to the <code>"Location"</code> header and to URL references within the response body. The <code>Set-Cookie</code> header is not encrypted but the <code>"path"</code> of each cookie is set to <code>"/"</code>.</p> <p>Requests to locations where <code>RF_UE_EncodeUrl</code> have to have an encrypted URL, exceptions may be defined. See also RF_UE_AllowPlainText.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>The <code>HttpsListener</code> writes the decrypted URL to its access log file. The initial request URL received from the client is stored in the HTTP header <code>HSP_UE_unparsed_uri</code>. This header can be used to write decrypted information to the access log of the <code>HttpsListener</code>, too.</p> <hr/> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_UE_EncodeUrl "on" "off"</code> Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. Default is off.</p>
RF_UE_AllowPlainText	Location	<p>Defines whether access with plain text URLs to locations with URL encryption enabled is allowed or not. For example, this behaviour may be used for the start page of an application. See RF_UE_AllowPlainUri for the detailed definition of exceptions.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with <code>"RF_UE_EncodeUrl on"</code>.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_UE_AllowPlainText "on" "off"</code> Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. Default is off.</p>
RF_UE_LockSessionIdPath	Location	<p>Locks an encrypted path to the user's session.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_UE_LockSessionIdPath "on" "off"</code> Inheritance: Settings are inherited to sub-locations. Default is off and encrypted paths are valid even the client session has expired.</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_EncodeQuery	Location	<p>Activates the encryption of the query string of an URL. "\$" forces the encryption of the whole string while "\" forces the value of each parameter to be encrypted separately. The optional argument "name" can be used to define query-names of which only the value is encrypted. Name-value pairs of queries must be separated by "&", e.g. ?uid=abc&pwd=1234.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_UE_EncodeUrl on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_EncodeQuery "\$" "" [+ -]<name>*</p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and - adds and removes names. If any name is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>Example: RF_UE_EncodeQuery url +uid +pwd Default is off.</p>
RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm	Location	<p>Encrypts the value attributes within HTML form input nodes with the specified name attribute.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm [+ -]<name></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes names. If any name is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>Example: RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm contractid Default is off.</p>
RF_UE_AllowPlainTextQuery	Location	<p>Defines whether access with plain text queries to a location having URL encryption enabled (and the specific query name defined by RF_UE_EncodeQuery/RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm) is allowed or not. "strict" enforces query encryption for any query name even it has not been specified by RF_UE_EncodeQuery, e.g. when using "RF_UE_EncodeQuery \$" or "RF_UE_EncodeQuery *".</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_UE_EncodeQuery on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_AllowPlainTextQuery "on" "off" "strict"</p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values.</p> <p>Default is off (enforces the encryption for the defined query names).</p>
RF_UE_LockSessionIdQuery	Location	<p>Locks encrypted query (RF_UE_EncodeQuery and RF_UE_EncodeQueryForm) strings to the current client session (type 0).</p> <p>Syntax: RF_UE_LockSessionIdQuery "on" "off"</p> <p>Inheritance: Settings are inherited to sub-locations.</p> <p>Default is off and an encrypted query string is still valid even the client session has been expired.</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_UE_EncodeAction	Location	<p>Defines the action when receiving a plain text path or query string for a location that has URL encryption activated.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_UE_EncodeAction "log" "deny" "drop"</code></p> <p>Default is "deny" (request is forbidden) with response status code 403. The action "drop" denies the request and additionally cancels the session. The action "log" only writes a message to the error log.</p>
RF_UE_AllowPlainUrl	Location	<p>Defines an URL by an regular expression where a plain text path and query in the request line is allowed by disabling rule check.</p> <p>RF_UE_AllowPlainUrl <regex url></p> <p>Default is none</p> <p>Inheritance: Definitions are not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_UE_EncodeUrlOff	Location	<p>Disables URL encryption (response processing) for specific URLs by use of a regular expression. This does not affect the data passing this location. To exclude specific URL patterns within the datastream the directive <code>'_RF_UE_UrlExclPattern_'</code> (in the <code>HttpsListener</code>) should be considered.</p> <p>RF_UE_EncodeUrlOff <regex url></p> <p>Default is none</p> <p>Inheritance: Definitions are not merged to sub locations.</p>
RF_UE_ContentTypeToEncode	Location	<p>Enables URL encryption for the specified MIME content-types.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with <code>"RF_UE_EncodeUrl on"</code>.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_UE_ContentTypeToEncode [+ -]<string></code></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes types. If any type is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>The current version of the URL encryption module supports HTML, JavaScript and CSS. Please note that JavaScript and CSS HTML inline code are always encrypted automatically.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p><code>RF_UE_ContentTypeToEncode +application/x-javascript</code></p> <p>Default is "text/html"</p>
RF_CE_PassPhrase	Virtual Server	<p>Pass phrase used to generate a symmetric key for cookie encryption.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_CE_PassPhrase <string></code></p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_CE_EncryptValue	Location	<p>Specify a cookie whose value is encrypted. This directive can be used in conjunction with the directives SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies and SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch. The cookie name is defined using regular expression.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_CE_EncryptValue <regex></code></p> <p>Inheritance: Command is used for the current location and all sub-locations until the directive is defined again. The directive can be specified multiple times within a location.</p> <p>Example: <code>RF_CE_EncryptValue LS_.*</code></p>
RF_CE_EncryptNameValue	Location	<p>Specify a cookie whose name and value is encrypted. Different key are used for the name and the value portion (the outcome of name encryption is always the same). This directive can be used in conjunction with the directives SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies and SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch. The cookie name is defined using regular expression.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_CE_EncryptNameValue <regex></code></p> <p>Inheritance: Command is used for the current location and all sub-locations until the directive is defined again. The directive can be specified multiple times within a location.</p> <p>Example: <code>RF_CE_EncryptNameValue LS_.*</code></p>
RF_CE_FilterPlainText	Location	<p>Set the policy how received cookies are handled whose value has not been encrypted.</p> <p>log writes a log message to the error log and lets the cookie pass</p> <p>delete writes a log message to the error log and removes the cookie from the cookie header.</p> <p>deny writes a log message to the error log and deny the request.</p> <p>Default is "off" (no action, lets the cookie pass).</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_CE_FilterPlainText "off" "log" "delete" "deny"</code></p> <p>Inheritance: Command is used for the current location and all sub-locations until the directive is defined again.</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_FormValidation	Location	<p>This directive enables or disables the module for this server.</p> <p>If mode is "On", an invalid parameter throws a "500 Internal Server Error" and the action taken is written to the end of the log entry for the invalid parameter. If mode is "Off", the module does not check anything. In "Log" mode, parameters are checked and invalid parameters are logged, but requests are never blocked. The validation does not only check HTML forms but also HTML hyperlinks and redirect location headers. See section "HTML Form Validation" for further information.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_Param "On" "Off" "Log"</code></p> <p>Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations.</p> <p>Example: <code>RF_FormValidation Log</code></p> <p>Default: Off</p>
RF_FormLogEncPassphrase	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the passphrase that is used to encrypt sensible validation data in log files. The passphrase must be at least 8 characters long. The passphrase can be set globally (server-wide) or for each virtual host specifically.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_FormLogEncPassphrase <string></code></p> <p>Default: Without the custom passphrase a build-in default string is used for encryption.</p>
RF_FormTypeDef	Location	<p>This directive assigns a regex to a type identifier. In the simplest case, the type corresponds to the value of the type attribute of an <input> in a <form>, for example "text" for a text input field. In reality, things are more complex, see section "HTML Form Validation" for a detailed guide how to configure form validation including how to use this directive.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>RF_FormTypeDef <type> <regex></code></p> <p>Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations individually.</p> <p>Note: Missing type defs can (due to inheritance) not be detected at server startup and are instead logged to the error log when processing requests.</p> <p>Examples: <code>RF_FormTypeDef text "[[:alnum:]]*\$</code></p> <p>Default types: See section "HTML Form Validation"</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_FormParamType	Location	<p>Assigns a type to either a parameter name or to a regex for the parameter name.</p> <p>When checking a request, the form validator iterates through all form parameters and determines its type (either defined by this directive or stated by the form field if there is no matching directive) in order to validate the input. See section "HTML Form Validation" for a detailed guide how to configure form validation.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_FormParamType (<param-name> regex:<param-name-regex>) <type></p> <p>Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations en bloc: If a location defines no form param types, all are inherited from the parent location; if a location defines form parameter types, none are inherited from the parent location.</p> <p>Example: RF_FormParamType streetname text</p>
RF_FormParamException	Location	<p>Assigns a type (or a regex for the parameter value) to a parameter name (or to a regex for the parameter name). The main difference to RF_FormParamType is that the parameter name can be the name of a parameter that was not present in any HTML form. See section "HTML Form Validation" for a detailed guide how to configure form validation.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_FormParamException [+ -](<param-name> regex:<param-name-regex>) (type:<type> <param-value-regex>)</p> <p>Inheritance: If a location defines no parameter exceptions all definitions from the parent location are inherited . If prefixed by "+" a parameter exception is added to the inherited set. Prefixed by "-" removes an exception from the inherited set. Any exception without a prefix disables inheritance form the upper location.</p> <p>Examples: RF_FormParamException +age type:number RF_FormParamException +regex:.*name\$ type:text</p>
RF_FormActionMap	Location	<p>This directive maps a form action to an alternative form action.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_FormActionMap <orig form action> <alternative form action></p> <p>Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations en bloc.</p> <p>Example: RF_FormActionMap /sls/login /sls/manipulated/login</p>
RF_FormExpiration	Location	<p>This directive defines the expiration of stored form data used for form validation.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_FormExpiration <seconds></p> <p>Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations.</p> <p>Example: RF_FormExpiration 86400 Default: 86400 seconds</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_FormNumberIdenticalIds	Location	This directive defines the number of forms with identical ID that can be stored simultaneously in the CDS. Syntax: RF_FormNumberIdenticalIds <number> Default: 10 forms.
RF_FormAuditLog	Virtual Server	Specifies an audit log where the form validation deny messages are written to. If this log is used, no parameter values are written to the standard error log file. Directive supports piped logging. This log may be used in conjunction with the <i>fvfilter2</i> utility in order to update the form validation rules. Syntax: RF_FormAuditLog <file>
RF_FormDecodeHtml	Location	Decodes HTML encoded query strings within HTML references. Syntax: RF_FormDecodeHtml on off Default is off. Inheritance: Overrides definitions in parent locations.
RF_ChangeReqHeader	Location	Replaces a 'search' pattern (literal string) by a 'replace' pattern. The replace pattern can be a literal string or an environment variable defined by use of SetEnvIf. In the latter case the replace pattern is prefixed by '\$'. Per default, only the first occurrence is replaced. The optional parameter "greedy" defines that all occurrences should be replaced. Only one rule per header is supported. Syntax: RF_ChangeReqHeader <header name> <search> <replace> [greedy] Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace	Location	Replaces the 'header' by the defined 'value' in the request headers. The value may be specified with an environment variable using SetEnvIf (value is prefixed by '\$'). The header is added to the request if it does not yet exist. Syntax: RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace <header> <value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIf*Header directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeIfReqHeaderReplace	Location	Sets a HTTP request header if the specified environment variable matches the defined regular expression. The directive recognizes the occurrences of \$1..\$9 within the value argument and replaces them by the subexpressions of the defined regex pattern. Syntax: RF_ChangeIfReqHeaderReplace <variable> <regex> [!]<header>=<value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIfResHeader directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_ChangeReqFixHeader	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeader but applied later in the request processing (Apache fixup handler).
RF_ChangeReqFixHeaderReplace	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace but applied later in the request processing (Apache fixup handler).
RF_ChangeResHeaderAdd	Location	Adds the 'header' with the defined 'value' to the request headers, e.g. to add a cookie. The value may be specified by an environment variable using SetEnvIf (the value is prefixed by '\$'). The directive is processed before the directives RF_ChangeResHeader, RF_ChangeResHeaderReplace, RF_SetEnvIfResHeader, and RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace. Syntax: RF_ChangeResHeaderAdd <header> <value> Inheritance: No configuration merging to sub locations. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIfResHeader directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeResHeader	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeader but applied to a response header.
RF_ChangeResHeaderReplace	Location	Same as RF_ChangeReqHeaderReplace but applied to a response header.
RF_SetEnvIfResHeader	Location	Creates a process environment variable if the specified response header value matches the defined argument. Works similar to Apache's SetEnvIf directive but is applied against the HTTP response headers. The directive recognizes the occurrences of \$1..\$9 within the header value and replaces them by the subexpressions of the defined regex pattern. Syntax: RF_SetEnvIfResHeader <header> <regex> [!]<variable>[=<value>] Inheritance: No configuration merge to sub location. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIfResHeader directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace	Location	Sets a HTTP response header if the specified environment variable matches the defined regular expression. The directive recognizes the occurrences of \$1..\$9 within the value argument and replaces them by the subexpressions of the defined regex pattern. Works contrariwise to RF_SetEnvIfResHeader. Syntax: RF_ChangeIfResHeaderReplace <variable> <regex> [!]<header>=<value> Inheritance: No configuration merge to sub location. A sub location having any RF_Change* or RF_SetEnvIfResHeader directive defined does not inherit the configuration from the upper location.
RF_AddHeaderContent	Location	Add header content to query. This works also for propagated headers from SLS. Syntax: RF_AddHeaderContent <query-parameter> <header name> Inheritance: No configuration inheritance to sub location.



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_RemoveQueryParameter	Location	Remove a specific query parameter. Syntax: <code>RF_RemoveQueryParameter <query-parameter></code> Inheritance: No configuration inheritance to sub location.
Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF) The following configuration directives offer protection against Cross-Site Request Forgery attacks. Take a look at chapter 4.38 Cross-Site Request Forgery Protection for a more detailed functionality description and configuration examples.		
RF_CSRF	Location	Enables or Disables form or query based Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF) prevention for a Location. Syntax: <code>RF_CSRF "on" "off"</code> Default is off. Note: This directive can also be used with the BrowserMatch Apache-directive: <code>BrowserMatch "curl" RF_CSRF=off</code> Inheritance: Settings from parent locations are inherited to sublocations. <hr/> Note When this directive is used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF_Header" , SRM first checks the presence of the CSRF header, and if not found, continues with validation of the form/query parameters. <hr/>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_CSRF_Header	Location	<p>Enables HTTP-Header based Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF) prevention for a Location and allows to optionally define the HTTP-Header name.</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_Header [<header-name>]</p> <p>Default is off.</p> <p>If no <header-name> is provided, the default header "X-CSRF-Token" will be used.</p> <p>The injected JavaScript can be defined with "RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript".</p> <p>If no script is provided, the default script will be injected.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>Take a look at chapter 4.38 Cross-Site Request Forgery Protection for the default injected script and a more detailed functionality description.</p> <hr/> <p>To distinguish GET requests generated by JavaScript and those made by the browser (href, src, etc.), the "X-Requested-With" header is used. GET requests are only checked for a token if the request contains the "X-Requested-With" header. Many common JavaScript frameworks and libraries set this header automatically. Nevertheless, GET request should never be used for state changing operations. POST requests are always checked.</p> <p>Inheritance: Settings from parent locations are inherited to sublocations.</p> <p>To disable protection the directives "RF_CSRF_DisableVerification" and "RF_CSRF off" can be used.</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>When this directive is used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF", SRM first checks the presence of the CSRF header, and if not found, continues with validation of the form/query parameters.</p> <hr/>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript	Location	<p>Allows to set a custom JavaScript that is injected when CSRF header protection is enabled. The script code can either be read from a file (path to file prefixed by file://) or stated directly in the configuration.</p> <hr/> <p>Note The variables "HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName" and "HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue" are automatically defined to hold the name of the CSRF token header, respectively the CSRF token value. Additionally, SRM injects the "HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin()" function which can be used to ensure that the request is not sent cross-site.</p> <hr/> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript file://<path> <script-inline></p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>// inject contents of a file RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript file ↔ :////tmp/csrf_inject.js // define an inline script RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript \ var x = "simple "; \n \ var y = "javascript "; \n \ var z = "syntax"; \n \ alert (x+y+z);</pre> <p>Inheritance: Settings from parent locations are inherited to sublocations.</p> <hr/> <p>Note Take a look at chapter 4.38 Cross-Site Request Forgery Protection for the default injected script and a more detailed functionality description.</p> <hr/>
RF_CSRF_CustomTypes	Location	<p>Add custom content types for which Cross-Site Request Forgery (CSRF) prevention should be enabled by default only http is supported. Add all additional supported types as a list to this directive. The content must provide html compliant tags otherwise it will not work. Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_CustomTypes [+ -]<name></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes types. If any type is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>Examples: RF_CSRF_CustomTypes xml</p>



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_CSRF_UnverifiedRequestTypes	Location	Allows to define request content types for which access without token verification is permitted. Without explicit definition all requests with Content-Type header values other than application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/form-data, and multipart/mixed are blocked. Syntax: RF_CSRF_UnverifiedRequestTypes <type 1> [<type 2> ... <typen n>] Inheritance: Settings from parent locations are inherited to sublocations. Examples: RF_CSRF_UnverifiedRequestTypes application/xml
RF_CSRF_SetTokenName	Location	Directive defines a parameter name within a form or URL query which contains the session ticket. If not set and CSRF is turned on, "CSRF_TOKEN" is used as parameter name. Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on". Syntax: RF_CSRF_SetTokenName <token-name> Examples: RF_CSRF_SetTokenName MY_CSRF_TOKEN
RF_CSRF_PostDataProtection	Location	Allows to enable or disable POST body data protection. If enabled POST body is checked for the CSRF Token. Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on" Syntax: RF_CSRF_PostDataProtection "on" "off" Default is on.
RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex	Location	This directive allows to enable CSRF prevention for GET requests. The request URLs matching the URL-regex will be checked for the CSRF token. The links in the response returned by the request will be extended with the token if the target URL is matched. Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on". Syntax: RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex [+ -]<regex> Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes names. If any name is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings. Example: RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex ^.*\$ Default is no query protection enabled.



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_CSRF_DisableVerification	Location	<p>When a request URL matches the regex specified by this directive the URL is not checked for a valid CSRF token. However, the response returned by the request will be extended with tokens.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on" or "RF_CSRF_Header".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_DisableVerification [+<->]<regex></p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes names. If any name is neither prefixed by "+" nor "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>RF_CSRF_DisableVerification start +entry</p> <p>Per default no disabling is active.</p> <p>Note: To disable verification for GET requests only, the environment variable <i>CSRF_DISABLE_GET_VERIFICATION</i> can be set.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>SetEnvIfPlus X-Requested-With WebView CSRF_DISABLE_GET_VERIFICATION</p>
RF_CSRF_SetErrorCode	Location	<p>Allows to set a different return code when the CSRF validation fails.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_SetErrorCode <http-error-code></p> <p>Default is "403"</p>
RF_CSRF_DeveloperJavaScript	Location	<p>This directive adds a JavaScript to the HTML header on each page. The script contains two functions: getCSRFTokenName() and getCSRFTokenValue(). This allows to create a valid CSRF protected request by the developer itself.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_DeveloperJavaScript "on" "off"</p> <p>Default value is off.</p>
RF_CSRF_DefaultUnprotectedResourcesDisable	Location	<p>Per Default requests on resources like images and style-sheets are not protected. The determination if the request is a resource is based on the filename ending. Should it be necessary to add CSRF protection to these kind of requests, this directive allows to enable it.</p> <p>Can only be used in conjunction with "RF_CSRF on".</p> <p>Syntax: RF_CSRF_DefaultUnprotectedResourcesDisable "on" "off"</p> <p>Default is "RF_CSRF_DefaultUnprotectedResourcesDisable off".</p>
<p>ICAP</p> <p>The ICAP filter module is explained in more detail in section "ICAP Request and Response Modification". The directive syntax is defined in "Table 15: Http(s)Listener - Request/Response Filter Directives" on page 45. Directives that are only supported in the SRManager are described below.</p>		



Table 16: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
ICAP_FO_SessionSticky	Location	This directive defines that ICAP requests for the same HTTP session try to stick on the same ICAP host (incl. service URI), i.e. the host corresponding to the session is tried first. Syntax: ICAP_FO_SessionSticky REQMOD RESPMOD on off Example: ICAP_FO_SessionSticky REQMOD on

3.5.4 SRManager - Session Control Directives

3.5.4.1 Session Controller

Table 17: SRManager - Session Control Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_Ext_Enable	Virtual Server	Specifies a list of External Session Representations to be enabled. Example: SE_Ext_Enable Cookie URL SslSid Bearer Default Setting is "Cookie" only
SE_Ext_Allow	Location	Specifies External Session Representations to be allowed for a specific Location. If a client tries to access a location without a valid External Session Representation, HTTP error 409 ("Conflict") is sent to the client. Example: SE_Ext_Allow Cookie URL SslSid Bearer Default setting is "Cookie" only
SE_SupCredGenerationTime	Location	Suppress the update of the generation counter of the external session representation after a successful login for the defined period. This may be used when using a "fast" login procedure (e.g. certificate based) when parallel login requests may receive new external session representations (e.g. SCDID cookie) with different generation counters. Syntax: SE_SupCredGenerationTime <seconds> Default is "0" (the generation counter is updated by every successful login) Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration. Define "0" seconds to disable the suppression mechanism.



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_OnClientIpChange	Virtual Server	<p>Specifies the action to take if a client has changed its IP address.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_OnClientIpChange <action>[:<action_parameters>]</p> <p>none Specifies no action Example: SE_OnClientIpChange none</p> <p>log Syntax: log:<log_level> log_level specifies the apache log level which can be one of alert, crit, error, warn, notice, info or debug. Example: SE_OnClientIpChange log:warn Default setting is "none" See section "Setting Action on IP/SSL SID Change" for more details.</p>
SE_OnClientSslSidChange	Virtual Server	<p>Specifies the action to take if a client has changed its SSL session id.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_OnClientSslSidChange <action>[:<action_parameters>]</p> <p>none Specifies no action Example: SE_OnClientSslSidChange none</p> <p>log Syntax: log:<log_level> *log_level specifies the apache log level which can be one of alert, crit, error, warn, notice, info or debug. Example: SE_OnClientSslSidChange log:warn Default setting is "none" See section "Setting Action on IP/SSL SID Change" for more details.</p>
SE_SSLSidLock	Virtual Server	<p>Specifies the action to take if a client has changed its SSL Session Id. This setting can be overridden by a "BrowserMatch" rule.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SSLSidLock "on" "off" "Is-controlled" on Enables the SSL Session Id Lock. off Disables the SSL Session Id Lock. Is- The SSL Session Id Lock is set to off unless controlled the login service enables it. Default setting is "off" For Browser match use " SE_SSLSidLock=<value>" See section "Session ID Lock" for more details.</p>



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_SSLSidLockErrorPage	Virtual Server	<p>Specifies the error page to display if the SSL Session Id has been changed by a client for which the SSL Session Id Lock is enabled.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>SE_SSLSidLockErrorPage <code>:<error-page></code></p> <p>code Specifies the HTTP error code to return to the client Example: 403 (HTTP Forbidden)</p> <p>error-page Specifies the error page to display. Use always the /srm-error-pages directory here</p> <p>Example: <pre>SE_SSLSidLockErrorPage 403:/srm-error-pages/ErrorSslSessionIdChanged.shtml</pre> See section "Session ID Lock" for more details.</p>
SE_SSLSidLockExcludeRegEx	Location	<p>Specifies URLs of HTTP "GET" and HTTP "HEAD" request to exclude from the SSL Session Id Lock (POST cannot be excluded).</p> <p>Syntax: <code>SE_SSLSidLockExcludeRegEx <regex-pattern></code></p> <p>regex-pattern Specifies the extended regular expression pattern to match the URI with.</p> <hr/> <p>Note The regex-pattern only matches the location extent of the URI, not the complete URI. I.e. if the URI requested by the client is /a /b/c/index.html and SE_SSLSidLockExcludeRegEx is defined inside <Location /a>, the regex-pattern is only matched against b/c/index.html.</p> <hr/> <p>Example: For exclusion of all files ending with .wmv: <pre>SE_SslSidLockExcludeRegEx ".wmv\$" See "man -s 5 regex" for regex syntax.</pre> </p>



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_LockHistorySize	Global	<p>Specifies the history size (number of items) of the SSL session ID lock rule mechanism. Anonymous users initially get a history size of 2. Once the user logs in, the history is expanded to the full size defined by SE_LockHistorySize.</p> <p>Remark: Once the history is full, a warning is issued to the error log (only if the user is logged in). From then on, the last entry in the history will be overwritten on each additional request of the client session.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_LockHistorySize <size></p> <p>size</p> <p>Specifies the maximal size of the SSL session ID lock history.</p> <p>Example: SE_LockHistorySize 250 Default size is 100.</p>
SE_LockDefineEvent	Virtual Server	<p>Specifies events to be traced/counter over a client session in the virtual server.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_LockDefineEvent <event name> : <event expression></p> <p>event name</p> <p>Specifies a user defined name for this event. It can be used as variable name in a SE_LockRule to refer to the event counter of this event.</p> <p>event expression</p> <p>Specifies an expression/condition to be evaluated (see section "Expression Language" for details on the grammar of the expression language). If the expression resolves to "true", the according event counter on this session is incremented.</p> <p>Example: See also section "Advanced Session ID Lock Rules".</p>



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_LockRule	Location	<p>Specifies a lock rule to protect a location with SSL session ID lock.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_LockRule [attribute,]<action> <rule expression></p> <p>action</p> <p>Specifies the action to be taken if <rule expression> evaluates to "true". Valid actions are:</p> <p>ACCEPT</p> <p>The request is accepted and no more rules are evaluated.</p> <p>LOG</p> <p>The matching rule is logged and next rule is executed.</p> <p>BLOCK</p> <p>The request is blocked and rule execution is interrupted.</p> <p>DROP</p> <p>The request is blocked, client session is dropped, and no more rules are evaluated.</p> <p>REAUTH</p> <p>The session is put into re-authentication state. This triggers a redirect to the login service on the next request to a restricted page. After successful re-authentication, the user will be able to continue the previous session.</p> <p>attribute</p> <p>Specifies additional attributes to an action.</p> <p>BIDCHECK</p> <p>Causes the browser to perform a browser ID check before the rule action is enforced. If the browser ID check succeeds, the lock rule action will be omitted and user will be able to continue its session. Note: BIDCHEK is only valid for actions LOG, BLOCK, DROP and REAUTH.</p> <p>rule expression</p> <p>Specifies an expression/condition to be evaluated (see section "Expression Language" for details on the grammar of the expression language).</p> <p>Note: The SE_LockRules are evaluated in the order they are defined in a location. Once a rule expression evaluates to "true", the action is enforced and - except for action LOG - rule execution is interrupted.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>If a location defines SE_LockRules, they are implicitly propagated to their sub locations, unless they define their own SE_LockRules.</p> <p>See also section "Advanced Session ID Lock Rules".</p>



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_LockReAuthState	Location	Sets the re-authentication state used for the action "REAUTH" when using the SE_LockRule directive. Syntax: SE_LockReAuthState <name> Default is "CredVerify"
SE_LockWhiteList	Location	Specifies a group of whitelisted IP net blocks for a location. Syntax: SE_LockWhiteList <groupname> : <ip[/net][,ip[/net]]> groupname Specifies the name of this whitelist. ip Specifies the address prefix of a net block in the whitelist. net Specifies the the length of the prefix. For IPv4 net blocks, valid values are from 0 to 32. For IPv6, values from 0 to 128 can be stated. If omitted, net will be assigned the default value of 32 for IPv4, and 128 for IPv6 respectively. To define more than one white list group, the directive can be used several times in the same location. The maximum number of IP addresses per list group is limited to 300 addresses. Line breaks must not be used in the configuration file. Example: SE_LockWhiteList whitelist4 : 172.17.2.0/24,172.17.4.0/24,172.17.5.230 SE_LockWhiteList whitelist6 : 2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:8a2e:0370:7777,3FFE:8160: Whitelists of parent locations are inherited to sub locations unless a sub location defines its own whitelists. See also section " Advanced Session ID Lock Rules ".
SE_LockBidCheckFile	Location	Defines the file containing the HTML page used for browser id verification, see also section " Browser Id ". An absolute path must be specified. The directive is usually defined within the login server location. Syntax: SE_LockBidCheckFile <file>
SE_LockBidCheckInitCounter	Location	Specifies the number of request that are allowed between the request the client has sent the browser id to the SES and a user login takes place. Only requests to the path within the location the browser id has been set does update this counter (usually the login server page). Value must be >= 1. Syntax: SE_LockBidCheckInitCounter <n> n The maximum number of requests to the login location until the user must do a login. Default is 1



Table 17: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_LockBidCheckMaxRedirects	Location	<p>Defines the number of requests to be redirected to BID check, before lock rule action is enforced.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_LockBidCheckMaxRedirects <n> n The number of requests to be redirected to BID check.</p> <p>Example: SE_LockBidCheckMaxRedirects 5 Default number of redirects is 3.</p>

3.5.5 Session Store

First the directives are described that have an effect on both available session stores. After that, all directives of the *L1 CD Session Store* and the *Apache Geode Session Store* are described.

Directive	Validity	Description
SE_SessionStore	Global	<p>Specifies the session store to be used.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SessionStore <l1 geode> With <i>l1</i> the L1 Session Store is used, whereas <i>geode</i> enables the Geode Session store. The default is <i>l1</i>.</p>
SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the maximum lifetime of a CD in seconds. Try to keep this value as low as possible to prevent excessive memory usage and to reduce the impact of DOS-attacks.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut <seconds> Default value is 3600 seconds.</p>
SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the inactive time out of a CD in seconds.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut <seconds> Default time out is 600 seconds.</p>
SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the inactive time out of a CD for an anonymous session (no login) in seconds.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut <seconds> Default is equal to the setting in SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut</p>
SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounter	Global	<p>Defines the number of requests until client data gets the full inactivity timeout as defined by SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut or SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut. Until the number of requests specified with this directive is reached, the inactivity timeout is set to the SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut or SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut divided by 3 but maximal to the timeout defined by SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounterTmo directive also divided by 3.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounter <number> Default are 4 requests.</p>



Directive	Validity	Description
SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounterTmo	Global	Specifies the maximum inactive timeout divided by 3 while SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounter is active. Syntax: SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounterTmo <seconds> Default are 600 seconds.

3.5.5.1 Apache Geode Session Store

The following directives control the Apache Geode Session Store. For a general overview on the setup of this session store please refer to "[Setting up an Apache Geode Session Store](#)".

Directive	Validity	Description
SE_GeodeSessionStoreRegion	Global	Allows to set the name of the Geode region to be used to save session data in. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreRegion <region> Default region is "session-store".
SE_GeodeSessionStoreCredentials	Global	Allows to set credentials in case user authentication is activated for the Geode cluster. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreCredentials <username> <password>
SE_GeodeSessionStoreLocator	Global	Allows to set one or more Geode locators (hostname with port) to connect to. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreLocator <host>:<port> [<host>:<port>, ...]
SE_GeodeSessionStoreKeystores	Global	Allows to set the keystore and truststore to be used in case SSL is enabled for the Geode Cluster. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreKeystores <keystore> <truststore> <i>keystore</i> should point to a .pem keystore file, containing the private key and public certificate used for TLS connection establishment to the Geode locator. <i>truststore</i> should point to a .pem keystore file, containing all public certificates (CA certificate, intermediate certificate, end-point certificate) that build chains of trust for TLS connection establishment to the Geode locator.
SE_GeodeSessionStoreLogging	Global	Allows to enable logging by defining the filename of the log file. Optionally, the log level can be set. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreLogging <file> [<level>] The default of the log level is <i>debug</i> . Other log levels are <i>error</i> , <i>warning</i> , <i>info</i> , <i>config</i> , <i>fine</i> , <i>finer</i> , <i>finest</i> , and <i>all</i> .
SE_GeodeSessionStoreRetriesOnFailure	Global	Allows to set the number of retries on failed cluster read/write operations on the Geode cluster. On reaching the limit an error response is returned to clients. Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreRetriesOnFailure <number> The default number of retries is 3.
SE_GeodeSessionStoreSystemProperty	Global	Allows to specify system properties to be used for setup Example: SE_GeodeSessionStoreSystemProperty max-fe-threads 10 Syntax: SE_GeodeSessionStoreSystemProperty <property> <value>



3.5.5.2 L1 Session Store

The following directives control the L1 Session Store, also known as L1 Client Data Store (L1 CDS). Thereon the directives of Session Transfer and Session Logout Handler mechanism are listed. Please note that this mechanisms only work in combination with the L1 Session Store.

Directive (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_L1Cds_SMFileAndSize	Global	Specifies the semaphore file path for shared memory. Should be located in the Surrender's "logs" directory. The file name is suffixed by the process id of the SRManager main process. The memory size in bytes must be specified in brackets. See also section " Client Data Store Settings ". Example: SE_L1Cds_SMFileAndSize /var/SRManager/logs/cds_shmht_lk(67108864) Default size is 1024kB
SE_L1Cds_AnonymousMinFreeMem	Global	Defines the minimum of free shared memory in percent in order to store anonymous sessions in the client data store. Anonymous session data get deleted and cookie check is disable when this threshold is reached. Log message gets written for each deleted session. Syntax: SE_L1Cds_AnonymousMinFreeMem <percentage> Example: SE_L1Cds_AnonymousMinFreeMem 20 Default is 30 percent
SE_L1Cds_CleanShutdown	Global	Deletes (wipe) the shared memory store at server shutdown. Syntax: SE_L1Cds_CleanShutdown Not set by default (memory is not wiped)
SE_L1Cds_GCInterval	Global	Defines the garbage collector interval in seconds. Syntax: SE_L1Cds_GCInterval <seconds> Default interval is 10 seconds. To not specify unless required.
SE_L1Cds_TEST	Global	Starts the internal self-test which takes about 5 seconds and produces significant CPU load. Do not use on productive systems.
Session Transfer Session Transfer allows the transmission of L1 Client Data from one SRM instance (source) to many others (destination). The source instance must implement the L1 Session Store interface which is accessible by other destination servers via HTTPS. The interface of the source server is defined by setting the default handler "session-transfer-interface". Each server must use the very same configuration files in order to ensure proper data transfer. Only the External Session Representation (ESR) "cookie" is supported for Session Transfer.		
SE_TransferHost	Global	Specifies all involved hosts (including self) by hostid and the host/port the transfer interface of each server is reachable. This command is specified multiple times on order to define the host table of all server instances. Specifying this directive enables the mod_session_transfer module. Syntax: SE_TransferHost <hostid> <hostname:port>
SE_TransferSecret	Global	Shared secret used for hostid encryption. Every involved server must use the same secret. Syntax: SE_TransferSecret <passphrase>



Directive (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_TransferControlFile	Global	Specifies the trigger file which activates session transfer. The specified file has to be touched on every destination server in order to allow them to request sessions from the source server when receiving an external session id cookie which can't be processed by the local server itself. Session transfer activation remains active for the timeout specified by the SE_TransferControlTimeout directive. Syntax: SE_TransferControlFile <path to file>
SE_TransferControlTimeout	Global	Specifies how long session transfer is active after the SE_TransferControlFile has been deleted. Syntax: SE_TransferControlTimeout <seconds> Default are 0 seconds (immediate stop)
SE_TransferClientCert	Global	Specifies the client certificate and key used to access the session transfer interface. Syntax: SE_TransferClientCert CERT=<path to cert pem file> PKEY=<path to private key pem file>
SE_TransferSSLServerCert	Global	Specifies the server CA certificate of the session transfer interface. Syntax: SE_TransferSSLServerCert CA=<path to ca pem file>
SE_TransferErrorCode	Global	Defines the error code when accessing a session which already has been transferred to another server. Syntax: SE_TransferErrorCode <http error code> Default is 500
Session Logout Handler Once a session has timed out or an active logout has been made (by requesting the logout page of the login service), a pre-defined logout URL of each application being accessed during the session is called. If the session is shared among a group of virtual servers (e.g. single sign on), then the logout request is made across all accessed applications being part of any of these virtual hosts.		
SE_LogoutPage	Location	Defines the application's logout URL to be accessed upon logout. Syntax: SE_LogoutPage <uri> Example: SE_LogoutPage /your/logout/page?your=params
SE_LogoutThreadLimit	Global	Defines the number of threads for handling logouts per process. Syntax: SE_LogoutThreadLimit <no-of-threads> Default is 20
SE_LogoutConnectTimeout	Virtual Server	Defines the timeout [s] for establishing connections to the logout host. Syntax: SE_LogoutConnectTimeout <timeout> Default is 3
SE_LogoutTimeout	Virtual Server	Defines the timeout [s] for sending logout requests to the logout host. Syntax: SE_LogoutTimeout <timeout> Default is 3

3.5.6 Client Data (CD) Control



Directive	Validity	Description
SE_LogNewCd	Global	<p>Specifies if client session creation should be logged and creates a statistic message when deleting the client session. The log messages are written with to the main error log file of the SRManager at the severity "notice". The log message contains the following data:</p> <p><i>start</i> session creation time (GMT) <i>login</i> time of fist login (GMT) <i>end</i> time the session has been deleted (GMT) <i>duration</i> duration between first and last request (seconds) <i>req</i> number of requests <i>min</i> shortest response time (seconds) <i>max</i> longest response time (seconds) <i>av</i> average response time (seconds) <i>total</i> total response duration (summary of all response times in seconds) <i>bytes</i> transferred bytes (download) <i>anonymous</i> session state (yes no) <i>size</i> memory used in the client data store</p> <p>Syntax: SE_LogNewCd on off Default is off.</p>
SE_CdSizeLimit	Virtual Server	<p>Activates the Cd size limitation mechanism. The limitation takes action if the shared memory usage reaches 70%.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_CdSizeLimit ("On" "Off" "Log") Default is Off</p>
SE_CdSizeError	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the action if a Cd with a too big size is detected. If on, it delivers a redirect on a defined error page 500, if off the response of application server goes back to client. In both cases the client session is deleted.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_CdSizeError ("On" "Off" "Log") Default is On.</p>
SE_CdSizeAuthMax	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the cd size allowed for authenticated sessions, if cd grows bigger and the cd size limitation takes action, cd will be deleted and a server error is generated.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_CdSizeAuthMax <size> Default is -1 means no limitation.</p>
SE_CdSizeAnonymousMax	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the cd size allowed for anonymous sessions, if cd grows bigger and the cd size limitation takes action, cd will be deleted and a server error is generated.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_CdSizeAnonymousMax <size> Default is -1 means no limitation.</p>

3.5.6.1 External Session Representation - Cookie

These directives control the Secure Client Data ID (SCDID) Cookie session representation. This External Session Representation is enabled by default.



Table 22: SRManager - Session Control Directives - Cookie

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_ExtCookie_PrivateKeyPath	Virtual Server	Used in conjunction with directive SE_ExtCookie_PassPhrase to generate SCDIDs which can be shared among SRM instances. Specifies the path to an RSA Key file which is used to generate a symmetric key. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_PrivateKeyPath <pathname> Do not specify unless sharing SCDIDs is required.
SE_ExtCookie_PassPhrase	Virtual Server	Used in conjunction with SE_ExtCookie_PrivateKeyPath to generate SCDIDs which can be shared among SRM instances. Does not specify the pass phrase for the key file specified with the directive SE_ExtCookie_PrivateKeyPath Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_PassPhrase <pass phrase> Do not specify unless sharing SCDIDs is required.
SE_ExtCookie_NoCookieCheck	Virtual Server	Disables the cookie-check mechanism which ensures that a client is able to accept the SCDID session cookie. Accepting the session cookie is vital. The mechanism should only be disabled in environments where it can be assumed that all potential client software in use can handle cookies or when External Session Representation is not based on the SCDID session cookie (e.g. with ESR SsISid). Note that this directive does not oversteer settings that are evaluated at request time (e.g. settings defined with BrowserMatch). Please see SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck for an alternative option to disable the cookie-check mechanism. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_NoCookieCheck
SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck	Virtual Server	Controls the activation of the cookie check mechanism for a specific Web-browser type identified by the HTTP "User-Agent" header. Use this command in conjunction with the "BrowserMatch" directive of mod_setenvif. The command is used if the cookie check mechanism is switched off by the SE_ExtCookie_NoCookieCheck command but must still applied for certain clients. See also section " Web-crawler Access " about the usage of this command. Syntax: BrowserMatch "<string>" SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck[=no] Example: BrowserMatch "Mozilla" SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck. Note: If you specify the value "no" for the SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck, cookie check will be deactivated explicitly for the specific browser type.
SE_ExtCookie_HttpOnly	Global Virtual Server	Controls the activation of the "HttpOnly" cookie attribute to the external session representation cookie. This is a non standard cookie attribute supported by different browser types (see sample configuration file) which prevents JavaScripts from accessing the session cookie. This option is activated using mod_setenvif, typically by the BrowserMatch directive. Syntax: BrowserMatch <pattern> SE_ExtCookie_HttpOnly Example: BrowserMatch "MSIE 6" SE_ExtCookie_HttpOnly



Table 22: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheckErrorPage	Virtual Server	Specifies the file name of the Cookie Check Error Page which is sent to the client if he does not accept the SCDID Cookie. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheckErrorPage <file_name> Default: CookieCheckError.html The file itself must be located in the local file system of the SRManager and accessible using the path /cookie-check/<file_name>.
SE_ExtCookie_CookieDomain	Virtual Server	Specifies the cookie domain string used for the SCDID Cookie. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_CookieDomain <string> Default: none, which causes the browser to send back the cookie to the issuing server only. Example: SE_ExtCookie_CookieDomain .example.com
SE_ExtCookie_CookieVerifyErrLogLevel	Virtual Server	Specify the severity-level of the log message which is written when an invalid SCDID has been received. This message can be caused by a restart of the SRM, but could also be the result of an unsuccessful attack to the SCDID. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_CookieVerifyErrLogLevel <severity> <severity> specifies the Apache error log severity: "emerg", "alert", "crit", "error", "warn", "notice", "info", "debug". Default is "alert".
SE_ExtCookie_NoSecureCookie	Virtual Server	Deprecated , use SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie instead.
SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie	Virtual Server	Enables secure SCDID cookie. If enabled and a HTTPS connection is detected, the "Secure" attribute is added to the HTTP "Set-Cookie" header. Additionally, "_S" is added to the Cookie name. Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie <on off> Default is "on" (enabled). Note: Using this directive might reduce security
SE_ExtCookie_SameSite	Virtual Server	Allows to set the <i>SameSite</i> attribute for the SCDID cookie. As defined per specification, the directive allows to set "None", "Lax" and "Strict". Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie <none lax strict> If the SameSite attribute is enabled by configuration, during runtime it can be disabled by setting the environment variable <i>SE_ExtCookie_SameSite</i> to "off". Example: BrowserMatch "Mozilla" SE_ExtCookie_SameSite=off Per default the SameSite attribute is not set. NOTE: According to specification, the <i>Secure</i> attribute must also be set when setting <i>SameSite</i> to <i>none</i> . Please ensure that <i>SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie on</i> is set in your configuration when <i>SE_ExtCookie_SameSite none</i> is used.



Table 22: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_ExtCookie_NameSuffix	Virtual Server	<p>Extends the name used for the SCDID Cookie. Full name of the cookie then is "SCDID"<suffix>["_S"] where <suffix> specified by this directive, "_S" is added for secure cookies (if enabled, see SE_ExtCookie_SecureCookie).</p> <p>Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_NameSuffix <suffix> <suffix> must contain alphanumeric characters only. Example: If suffix is set to "abc" and the cookie is secure, the resulting cookie name is "SCDIDabc_S".</p> <p>NOTE: Keep in mind, that if you use a custom session cookie name, it might get blocked by the ModSecurity rules. In such a case, you will have to add custom exceptions to make sure your cookie will not be blocked.</p>
SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheckSuffix	Virtual Server	<p>Extends the name of the cookie check location. Full name of the cookie-check location than is "/cookie-check"<suffix> where <suffix> is specified by this directive.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheckSuffix <suffix> <suffix> must contain alphanumeric characters only. Example: If suffix is set to "abc" the resulting location is "/cookie-checkabc".</p> <p>Note: To have the cookie-check error pages displayed correctly, the htdocs/cookie-check directory has to be renamed/copied.</p>

3.5.6.2 External Session Representation - URL

These directives control the URL-rewriting mode of SCDID session representation. This External Session Representation is disabled by default.

Table 23: SRManager - Session Control Directives - URL Rewriting

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_ExtUrl_PrivateKeyPath	Virtual Server	<p>Used in conjunction with directive SE_ExtUrl_PassPhrase to generate SCDIDs (Secure Data Client IDs) which can be shared among SRM instances.</p> <p>Specifies the path to an RSA Key file which is used to generate a symmetric key.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_ExtUrl_PrivateKeyPath <pathname> Do not specify unless sharing SCDIDs is required.</p>
SE_ExtUrl_PassPhrase	Virtual Server	<p>Used in conjunction with SE_ExtUrl_PrivateKeyPath to generate SCDIDs (Secure Data Client IDs) which can be shared among SRM instances.</p> <p>Does not specify the pass phrase for the key file specified with the directive SE_ExtUrl_PrivateKeyPath</p> <p>Syntax: SE_ExtUrl_PassPhrase <pass phrase> Do not specify unless sharing SCDIDs is required.</p>



3.5.6.3 External Session Representation - SslSid

These directives control the SSL Session ID (SslSid) session representation.

Table 24: SRManager - Session Control Directives - SSL Session ID

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_ExtSslSid_ErrorPage	Virtual Server	Specifies the error page to display if the browser does not support the ESR SslSid. The page must be located in the "/esr-sslsid-init" directory. Syntax: SE_ExtSslSid_ErrorPage <filename> Default is SslSidError.shtml
SE_ExtSslSid_Supported	Virtual Server	Defines the browser type which supports this session representation. It defines the allowed HTTP "User-Agent" header. Use this command in conjunction with the "BrowserMatch" directive of mod_setenvif. Syntax: BrowserMatch "<string>" SE_ExtSslSid_Supported ="yes" "no" Example: BrowserMatch "(Mozilla/5.0).*(Windows NT 5).*(rv:1)" SE_ExtSslSid_Supported =yes Default is "no".

3.5.6.4 Internal Session Representation - Cookie

The following directives control the handling of internal session references (Cookies) which include the HSP Credentials and any Cookies sent by application..

Table 25: SRManager - Session Control Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_IntCookie_ParserMode	Location	Allows to define how the Set-Cookie parser should handle the deprecated "Version" and "Comment" attributes (from RFC 2965). In legacy mode, these attributes are still supported. In rfc6265 mode, only attributes according to RFC 6265 are allowed in Set-Cookie headers. This is mainly of interest when cookies are set as "persistent" with either SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies or SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch . Syntax: SE_IntCookie_ParserMode legacy rfc6265 Note: Other legacy attributes like "CommentURL" or "Discard" are not supported, even in legacy mode. Merging: The setting is inherited to sublocations. Default: By default, the Set-Cookie parser operates in rfc6265 mode (i.e. "Version" and "Comment" are not allowed).



Table 25: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_IntCookie_DomainMatchingPolicy	Global, Virtual Server	<p>Defines the Domain Matching policy that is applied to cookies. "strict" enforces strict domain-matching (according RFC 6265) between the hostname (of the used backend) and the domain of the cookie. If no domain-match is given, a cookie is filtered. "loose" policy allows all cookies of any domain (no domain-matching is performed, and thus no filtering). The domain-matching policy is applied to persistent and non-persistent cookies. Default policy is "strict".</p> <p>Syntax: <code>SE_IntCookie_DomainMatchingPolicy strict loose</code></p> <p>Merging: The global setting is inherited to virtual servers.</p>
SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies	Virtual Server, Location	<p>Specifies a list of cookie names which are ignored by the Cookie Filter of the Session Store. Security-sensitive Cookies should not be specified in this list.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies <cookie_name> <cookie_name> ..</code></p> <p>Note: The Access Control module corrects the patch of cookies, even when they are configured as persistent. See Directives AC_ForceAsCookiePaths, AC_GlobalCookies and AC_GlobalCookiesMatch.</p> <p>Note: When using this directive on location basis it must be ensured that all URLs are included on which the corresponding backend application can set cookies. For example, problems arise if the directive is used on a sub-location but the application sets a specific cookie on a parent location, too. It can become even more complicated when an application sets/updates the same cookie on different locations and the location taking the directive is not well chosen. The result can be that such a cookie is stored in the cookie store of the client as well as in the Client Data Store of SRM. If this is the case, please note that cookies received from client are given precedence.</p> <p>Note: Security-sensitive Cookies should not be specified in this list.</p> <p>Merging: No merging. SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies has to be specified for each virtual server or location, respectively. Global configuration is used if the directive is not used within a virtual server or a location.</p>



Table 25: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch	Virtual Server, Location	<p>Specifies a list of cookie names which are ignored by the Cookie Filter of the Session Store. In contrast to SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies, this directive uses regular expressions to define the cookie name. The regular expression must use anchoring.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch <regular_expression> ...</p> <p>Note: The Access Control module corrects the patch of cookies, even when they are configured as persistent. See Directives AC_ForceAsCookiePaths, AC_GlobalCookies and AC_GlobalCookiesMatch.</p> <p>Note: When using this directive on location basis it must be ensured that all URLs are included on which the corresponding backend application can set cookies. For example, problems arise if the directive is used on a sub-location but the application sets a specific cookie on a parent location, too. It can become even more complicated when an application sets/updates the same cookie on different locations and the location taking the directive is not well chosen. The result can be that such a cookie is stored in the cookie store of the client as well as in the Client Data Store of SRM. If this is the case, please note that cookies received from client are given precedence.</p> <p>Note: Certain special internal cookies (e.g. UspSlsInternalUserInfo) can't be specified as persistent via SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch for security reasons. If these cookies need to be persistent, only explicit configuration via SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies is allowed.</p> <p>Example: SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch ^ASPSESSIONID.*\$</p> <p>Merging: No merging. SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch has to be specified for each virtual server or location, respectively. Global configuration is used if the directive is not used within a virtual server or a location.</p>
SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMapping	Global, Virtual Server, Location	<p>Defines a mapping of cookies to a specific domain. If the regular expression matches the name of a cookie, the value of the domain-attribute is set to the specified domain string.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMapping <regular_expression> <domain></p> <p>Example: SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMapping ^ASPSESSIONID.*\$.example.com</p> <p>Merging: Globally settings are inherited to virtual servers, from virtual servers to locations, from parent locations to sub-locations.</p>



Table 25: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath	Location	<p>This directive specifies the path where to store the set-cookie headers in cookie store. This binds a cookie to a host. Two host which set a cookie to path=/foo will not overwrite each other anymore.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath ("On" "Off") If no argument is given the default value of SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath is Off. Note: On next request the path from set-cookie is put into cookie header and not the specified path. Merging: The SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath directive is inherit in sub locations. With SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath Off you can break inheritance in sub location. Example: SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath On</p>
SE_IntCookie_FilterAsCookiePathMatch	Location	<p>Defines cookie names (by a regular expression) which are filtered based on their path. Cookies whose name matches the expression and which have been set outside this location (path defines a higher location/path) are not forwarded to the application server. Use the '+' prefix to add a rule or '-' to remove a rule (for sub-locations). Directive is usually used in conjunction with the SE_IntCookie_ForceAsCookiePath directive. Filter may applied to non-persistent cookies only.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_IntCookie_FilterAsCookiePathMatch '+' '-' '<regex> Example (block SESSIONID cookies which have been set the the "/" path): <Location /webapp> SE_IntCookie_FilterAsCookiePathMatch +SESSIONID</p>
SE_IntCookie_HostBoundCookies	Location	<p>Do bind a cookie to the sending host. This can be used for failover host and more over for dynamic host selection see HGW_Host directive. Cookies set in the same session in the same location from different hosts (failover, dynamic host selection) can be bound to the setting host and therefore can guarantee that a cookie is not shared with the other hosts in the same location.</p> <p>Syntax: SE_IntCookie_HostBoundCookies On Off Default: Off Example: On</p>

3.5.6.5 Session Free Public Location



Table 26: SRManager - Session Free Public Location

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_SessionFreeLocation	Location	This directive allows to specify a location which is session free. No cookie-check is performed and no SCDID cookie is sent back to the client. Syntax: SE_SessionFreeLocation "on" "off" Example: SE_SessionFreeLocation on

3.5.6.6 User Tracking Cookie

Table 27: SRManager - User Tracking

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SE_UserTrack_Name	Virtual Host	Enables the per user tracking cookie which is a persistent cookie stored within the user's browser. The cookie may be used to track a user within multiple sessions. The 'name' parameter defines the name of the cookie. The 'domain' parameter is an optional domain attribute of the cookie. The cookie has a max-age of two years. The user tracking cookie is available via the Apache process environment variable 'UserTrack' and may be logged within the server's access log. Syntax: SE_UserTrack_Name <name> [<domain>]
SE_UserTrack_Passphrase	Virtual Host	Specifies the passphrase which is used to create the user tracking cookie. The directive must be specified when enabling user tracking using SE_UserTrack_Name. Syntax: SE_UserTrack_Passphrase <string>
SE_UserTrack_Forward	Virtual Host	Allows the forwarding of the user tracking cookie to the application. May be used in conjunction with SE_UserTrack_Name. Default is off. Syntax: SE_UserTrack_Forward on off
SE_UserTrack_Header	Virtual Host	Forwards the user tracking cookie to the application server via the specified HTTP request header. May be used in conjunction with the SE_UserTrack_Name directive. Syntax: SE_UserTrack_Header <name>

3.5.7 SRManager - Recorder Directives



Table 28: SRManager - Recorder Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
REC_BehaveOnError	Location	<p>Defines the server behave on error. The server may either ignore the error and continue operation without recording data or the server can abort a request on errors which causes a HTTP server error sent to the Client.</p> <p>Syntax: REC_BehaveOnError <action> where "action" is either IGNORE or ABORT Example: REC_BehaveOnError ABORT Default is IGNORE</p>
REC_BodyLimit	Location	<p>Defines the maximal number of bytes to be recorded for the specified body data type.</p> <p>Syntax: REC_BodyLimit <type_name>=<size> where "type_name" is either RQBC or RSBC and "size" the number of bytes. Example: REC_BodyLimit RQBC=1024 There are no limitations set by default.</p>
REC_ContentType	Location	<p>Defines the content types to be recorded. Setting is applied to incoming and outgoing body data.</p> <p>Multiple content types may be specified by multiple arguments. "ALL" can be used to enable recording of all content types. Otherwise type alias names or specific mime types may be specified. See the "REC_SHOWCT" command directive to get a list of all available alias names.</p> <p>The prefixes "+" and "-" are used to name additional content types to be recorded (+) or filtered (-).</p> <p>Syntax: REC_ContentType ["+" "-"] <alias_name <content_type> Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes content types from the current location configuration. If the value is not prefixed by '+' or '-', it Overrides the upper location settings. Example: REC_ContentType ALL -IMAGE +image/jpeg -text/plain Default is none</p>
REC_MsgType	Location	<p>Colon separated list of message types to be recorded. Available values are ALL, NONE, RQHC, RQHS, RQBC, RSHC, RSHS, RSBC.</p> <p>Syntax: REC_MsgType <type id>:<type id>:<type id> Example: REC_MsgType RQHC: RSHC Default is NONE</p>
REC_SHOWCT	Global	<p>Causes the SRM to list all the available content type alias names and the mime-type names embraced by the alias name. The command causes the SRM to exit immediately.</p> <p>You might use the command as shown below to do this:</p>
REC_DestDir	Global	<p>Path where the recorded data is stored to.</p> <p>This directory must be created before the server is started. Ensure to create also the necessary subdirectories: Create a subdirectory for every "HSP_Appld" command directive you have defined.</p> <p>Syntax: REC_DestDir <directory> Example: REC_DestDir /var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/recdata</p>



Table 28: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
REC_RotateTime	Global	Time in seconds defining the time interval to rotate the output files. Syntax: REC_RotateTime <seconds> Example: REC_RotateTime 600 Default is one second

3.5.8 SRManager - Access Control Directives

3.5.8.1 Basic Access Control

Table 29: SRManager - Access Control Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
<p>Security Realm</p> <p>A security realm is a group of applications which accept the same user authentication authority. The scope of the realm is defined by its URL path which is set using the directive AC_AuthorizedPath. Each realm distinguish between tree access are levels. These levels are defined by the AC_AccessArea directive any may be specified on a per location level. A user which is authenticated for the realm may access any link within the realm if he has a sufficient access area level. Time out settings for the authenticated sessions may be set on a per server or per location level using the AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout and AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger directives. Use the AC_LoginPage to specify the URL of the secure login service which authenticates the user.</p> <p>Note: The authentication information is stored a a "Type 1" session, see section "Session Management". By default, these sessions are shared within virtual hosts. Set the SE_SessionStore_HostLockIn order to lock the security realm to a single virtual host.</p>		
AC_AccessArea	Location	<p>Specifies the security class for the application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Public no restriction Member applications that need weak authentication (e.g. user name/password). A user which has been authenticated for the access area "Member" may access all applications on "Public" and "Member" level. Customer used for applications requiring strong authentication (e.g. certificates, RSA SecurID, etc.). A user which has been authenticated for the access area "Customer" may access all applications on "Public", "Member" and "Customer" level. <p>Syntax: AC_AccessArea "Member" "Public" "Customer" Default is "Public"</p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_AuthorizedPath	Location	<p>Defines a single sign-on domain.</p> <p>Make sure that the login service and all applications belonging to the domain are located under this path (so that the authorized path is inherited accordingly). If the location of a login service (or an application) is not located under this path, the setting has to be set explicitly.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_AuthorizedPath <path></code></p> <p>Where <code><path></code> must be an absolute path.</p> <p>Example: <code>AC_AuthorizedPath /member/apps</code></p> <p>Default is <code>"/</code>.</p> <p>Please note: If a request is made to a login location without the RequestedPage GET Parameter, the path defined in this setting is used for determining which session information (access area, authorized path, cookie domain, etc) to be sent to the login service. With the RequestedPage parameter, however, session information is taken from the location of the requested page - that means - from the location itself, not from the location of its AC_AuthorizedPath. See the FAQ in the SLS admin guide for examples around this behavior.</p>
AC_LoginPage	Location	<p>The URL the Client is redirected to if the authorization has failed this location.</p> <p>For login locations, this parameter must be the same as the value specified by directive <code>"AC_StartPage"</code>.</p> <p>Optionally, a query string can be specified. In this case, only the path part must be equal to the value specified with <code>"AC_StartPage"</code>.</p> <p>The special variable <code>\$AC_LoginPageVar</code> may be used as the path argument in order to read the login server path from the <code>AC_LoginPageVar</code> variable which may be defined by the <code>mod_setenvif</code> module.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_LoginPage <path></code></p>
AC_ReAuthPage	Location	<p>The URL to which clients are redirected if a session has exceeded the inactivity time limit.</p> <p>NOTE: The specified path must also be added to the <code>"AC_StartPageList"</code> and <code>"AC_ReAuthPageList"</code> of the the corresponding <code>AC_LoginPage</code> location.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_ReAuthPage <path></code></p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout	Location	<p>The final time-out for the HSP Credential. If the overall-age of the HSP Credential reached this value, the HSP Credential is invalid and is rejected in any case, renewal is no longer possible.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout <seconds> "member=<seconds>,customer=<seconds>"</p> <p>Where <seconds> can be also an ascending or descending range. This is meant to provide a limitation mechanism when the timeout is dynamically set by login service or application server via Access Control Attributes.</p> <p>Example: AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout member=1200-1000,customer=1000-2400 Defines that a dynamically set final timeout must be between 1000 and 1200 seconds for access area Member, and between 1000 and 2400 seconds for access area Customer. The default value is 1200 seconds for Member and 1000 seconds for Customer. The default value is used when no dynamic timeout from login service or application server is signaled.</p> <p>*NOTE: * When specifying a range, the first parameter is the default value, regardless of whether it's an ascending or descending range. Also note that when specifying this directive without an access area, the settings affect both access areas.</p>
AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod	Location	<p>The duration in seconds for which the HSP Credentials are valid. With activity, this period is renewed until AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout expires. The renewal is controlled by AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger</p> <p>Syntax: AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod <seconds> "member=<seconds>,customer=<seconds>"</p> <p>Where <seconds> can be also an ascending or descending range. This is meant to provide a limitation mechanism when the timeout is dynamically set by login service or application server via Access Control Attributes.</p> <p>Example: AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod 1800 (will grant access for half an hour for access areas Member and Customer.) AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod member=1800-3600,customer=1800-5400 (will grant access for half an hour per default for both access areas. Will allow to set the validity period dynamically to up to one hour for access area Member and up to one and a half hour for access area Customer.)</p> <p>*NOTE: * When specifying a range, the first parameter is the default value, regardless of whether it's an ascending or descending range. Also note that when specifying this directive without an access area, the settings affect both access areas.</p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger	Location	<p>If this trigger is reached, the SRM updates the HSP Credential (Cookie) within the next HTTP response to the client. This value is specified in seconds left of the HSP Credential Validity Period.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger <seconds> "member=<seconds>,customer=<seconds>"</p> <p>Where <seconds> can be also an ascending or descending range. This is meant to provide a limitation mechanism when the timeout is dynamically set by login service or application server via Access Control Attributes.</p> <p>Recommended value is 2/4 to 3/4 of AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod.</p> <p>Example: If AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod is set to 1800, this value should be set to 1350 which is $1800 \times \frac{3}{4}$.</p> <p>Default: $AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod \times \frac{9}{10}$</p> <p>*NOTE: * When specifying a range, the first parameter is the default value, regardless of whether it's an ascending or descending range. Also note that when specifying this directive without an access area, the settings affect both access areas.</p>
AC_CustomResponseOnSessionTimeout	Location	<p>Allows to configure an HTTP status code and a file resource to be delivered to the client on session timeout instead of HTTP 302 redirection to the login location. At the moment, only .json files are supported. To distinguish whether HSP sends an HTTP redirect or the custom response, the environment variable API_USER_AGENT is used. This offers maximum flexibility as it allows to mark a client based on various request properties such as the user agent, the request URI or any HTTP header.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_CustomResponseOnSessionTimeout <status> <file></p> <p>Settings are inherited to sub-locations.</p> <p>Example configuration: AC_CustomResponseOnSessionTimeout 401 /path/to/ErrorSessionTimeout401.json # set variable based on the X-Requested-With header to mark a JS client SetEnvIf X-Requested-With XMLHttpRequest API_USER_AGENT</p>
AC_StartPage	Location	<p>This directive defines the start page which is allowed to authorize the client for a domain. The specified path should be forwarded to a login service. For the specified path, Access Control is bypassed. Therefore, the login service can be accessed even if the login service is located location with is not public.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_StartPage <path></p> <p>Where <path> must not contain the server name.</p> <p>Note: This directive do overwrite all start pages which are defined with AC_StartPageList before.</p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_StartPageList	Location	<p>This directive defines a set of possible start pages which are allowed to authorize the client for a domain. For the specified path, access control is bypassed, even with non-public .</p> <p>Inheritance: Merges the per location configuration values. '+' and '-' adds and removes start pages from the current location configuration. If any of the values are not prefixed by '+' or '-', the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_StartPageList [+ -] <path></p> <p>Example: AC_StartPageList +/foo/auth -/foo/login add /foo/auth to the list and removes /foo/login from the list</p> <p>Example: AC_StartPageList /foo/auth +/foo/login starts a new list and adds /foo/auth and /foo/login to the list.</p>
AC_ReAuthPageList	Location	<p>This directive defines a set of pages which are supposed to be used for re-authentication of a timed-out session.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_ReAuthPageList [+ -] <path></p>
AC_StartQueryString		<p>The query string (URL Parameters for a HTTP GET Request) is a part of the start page (AC_StartPage) on which no access control will be performed. Other query strings are not allowed for the start page.</p> <p>Default is none which does not allow any arguments.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_StartQueryString <regular_expression></p> <p>The regular expression must include "\$", "\^" See "man -s5 regex" for regular expression syntax.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>AC_StartQueryString ^.*\$ No Restrictions</p> <p>AC_StartQueryString ^.{100}\$ Any Query String which has maximum length of 100 characters, allows no query string.</p> <p>AC_StartQueryString ^Value=[a-zA-Z0-9]{10,20}\$ Any Query string containing a-z,A-Z,0-9 which length must be from 10 to 20 characters.</p>
AC_UserDataTransferToPublic	Location	<p>If this is selected, the UserData gained at login time (if there is any) will also be available in Public areas (not only in Member or Customer areas).</p> <p>Syntax: AC_UserDataTransferToPublic "ON" "OFF"</p> <p>Default is "OFF". Do not enable unless required.</p>
AC_LoginUserDataHeaderName	Location	<p>Specifies the HTTP header name used to forward additional user data to the application server.</p> <p>This data is provided by the Login Service configured by the directive AC_StartPage upon successful authentication and stored in the HSP Credentials.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_LoginUserDataHeaderName <name></p> <p>Default is "LoginCredentials"</p>
AC_HspCredentialPassPhrase	Location	<p>Additional pass phrase used for encryption of the HSP Credential (Cookie).</p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_HspCredentialSignatureScheme	Virtual Server	Specifies how HSP Credentials (Cookies) created by the HSP will be encrypted, either: symmetric faster asymmetric slower, verify possible by other instances Syntax: AC_HspCredentialSignatureScheme "symmetric" "asymmetric" Default is "symmetric"
AC_SendSessionCred	Location	Enables sending of the Session Credential (cookie). These credentials will only be accepted if presented from the "inside compartment". The credentials will be encrypted with the given Private-Key and pass phrase so they differ from the Session-Credentials that the SRManager accepts from the "outside compartment" Syntax: AC_SendSessionCred <keyfile>:<passphrase> The key file and pass phrase MUST correspond to the Virtual Hosts's directives AC_HspCredential*Path files and AC_HspCredentialPassPhrase that verifies these SessionCredentials from the "inside compartment". Default is not to send the HSP Credentials to the inside compartment Because of security reasons, this parameter should not be used unless required.
AC_InternalLoginRedirect	Location	Allows to change the default behavior (302 redirect to login service) when a protected location is accessed without a valid session. If set to 'on', unauthenticated requests are internally redirected to login service without the involvement of the client. This functionality can be used to implement transparent login in conjunction with the HGW_Aai_ReplayOnLogin directive. Syntax: AC_InternalLoginRedirect "on" "off" NOTE The internal login redirect functionality can also be enabled per request by setting the environment variable <i>INTERNAL_LOGIN_REDIRECT</i> . For example: SetEnvIf AUTHORIZATION "Bearer .*" INTERNAL_LOGIN_REDIRECT NOTE In case an unauthenticated requests carries body data (e.g. POST request with Content-Length header information), all data is read from client and sent to the login service as soon as the internal redirect is performed. However, the body data can also be withhold at the client and not read until access is granted and the request is forwarded to the corresponding application server. The withholding can be achieved by setting the environment variable <i>INTERNAL_LOGIN_REDIRECT_WITHHOLD_BODY</i> . In the following example SetEnvIf is used to activate payload withholding for requests whose Content-Length exceeds the limit of 1 MB. SetEnvIf Content-Length "[1-9][0-9]{6,}" INTERNAL_LOGIN_REDIRECT_WITHHOLD_BODY NOTE The client is not informed about this redirection, so that relative paths (e.g. of image locations) might be misinterpreted by the browser as relative to the originally requested page.



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_HspCredentialCertificatePath	Virtual Server	The path to the certificate (i.e. the public key) to be used for cookie encryption and signing. If not specified, a symmetric, internally generated key is used. Use only if HSP sessions are shared between multiple HSP instances or a "Secure Zone Gateway" configuration is used. Syntax: AC_HspCredentialCertificatePath Format must be PEM, X.509 Certificate with RSA Public Key.
AC_Gateway	Virtual Server	This directive allows SLS to set HGW_Host with the \$ACA Attribute. Syntax: AC_Gateway <on off> Default: "off"
AC_HspCredentialPrivateKeyPath	Virtual Server	The path to the private key to be used for cookie encryption and signing. Use only if HSP sessions are shared between multiple HSP instances or a "Secure Zone Gateway" configuration is used. If not specified, a symmetric, internally generated key is used. The file must contain a PEM-encoded RSA private key.
AC_DeleteAsCookiesOnlaTimeout	Location	If enabled, cookies set by applications in non-public areas are deleted on credential timeout. Syntax: AC_DeleteAsCookiesOnlaTimeout "on" "off" Default is "off".
AC_ForceAsCookiePaths	Location	Checks and adjusts the path of cookies set by applications (Set-Cookie header) in non-public areas. The path is set to the value defined by "AC_AuthorizedPath" in case the path is above the authorized path (root-wards). A cookie is dropped if the path is outside of the authorized path. See also directive "AC_GlobalCookies" and "AC_GlobalCookiesMatch" to exclude cookies from forcing their paths. Syntax: AC_ForceAsCookiePaths "on" "off" Default is "on".
AC_GlobalCookies	Location	Defines names cookies which will be excluded from forcing their paths (see directive "AC_ForceAsCookiePaths"). Syntax: AC_GlobalCookies <name1> <name2> See also directive "AC_GlobalCookiesMatch". Default is none.
AC_GlobalCookiesMatch	Location	Defines names cookies which will be excluded from forcing their paths (see directive "AC_ForceAsCookiePaths") using extended regular expressions. Syntax: AC_GlobalCookies <regex1> <regex2> See "man -s5 regex" for details on extended regular expressions. <i>Note: Do not forget to specify "" and "\$" if required.</i> See also directive "AC_GlobalCookies". Sample Values: "^ASPSESSION", "^TestCookie"
AC_AcceptedAuthStates	Location	Restricts the states a login service or application server can set for 're-authentication' using the AccessArea header. If not defined, all states except the internal states 'None', 'Valid', 'Invalid' and 'Expired' are allowed. Syntax: AC_AcceptedAuthStates <state1> <state2> <i>Note: <stateX> can be any string containing alphanumeric characters only.</i> Example: AC_AcceptedAuthStates CredVerifyID CredVerifyPW



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_HspCredentialTimeoutCookie	Location	<p>Sends a cookie to told the client the expiration time of the HSP session credential in the time format UTC.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_HspCredentialTimeoutCookie <cookie-name> <domain></code></p> <p>Note: This mechanism do not update cookies defined in parent locations! Also it is important, that the defined cookie name is transparent for the client, see: SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies directive.</p> <p>Example: <code>AC_HspCredentialTimeoutCookie MyTimeoutCookie www.my-domain.ch</code></p>
AC_HspParameterEncryption	Location	<p>Forces the symmetric encryption of data generated by the SRManager which is send to the client in order to prevent parameter tempering. This is used to force the encryption of the RequestedPage parameter used for redirects to the login service for example. The action "remove" is used to grant access but removing the parameter from the request in the case the parameter may not be decrypted.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_HspParameterEncryption off on remove</code></p> <p>Default is off.</p>
AC_RequireAz	Location	<p>Defines the application authorization identifier (az) for the location. Use "+" or "-" signs to add or remove identifiers in sub-locations (definitions from parent context will be inherited). If any of the values are not prefixed by "+" or "-", the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings. Multiple names can be defined for a location and the client must be authorized for any of the defined authorization identifier. AC_RequireAz must only be specified for member and customer locations (see AC_AccessArea).</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_RequireAz [+ -]<name></code></p> <p>Use AC_RequireAzNone to unset this directive for a sub location.</p> <p>Default is NONE</p> <p>Example: <code>AC_RequireAz mgr01 +mgr02</code></p>
AC_RequireAzLogic	Location	<p>Defines a Boolean expression using authorization identifiers as variables. The truth value of the expression defines whether access to the location is given or not. Supported logical connectives are "&" (denoting AND), " " (denoting OR) and "!" (denoting NOT). Use "\$" to re-use the parent's expression in its sub-locations.</p> <p>AC_RequireAzLogic must only be specified for member and customer locations (see AC_AccessArea).</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_RequireAzLogic "<boolean expression>"</code></p> <p>Use AC_RequireAzLogi to unset this directive for a sub location.</p> <p>Default is NONE</p> <p>Example: <code>AC_RequireAzLogic "\$ & !(A B)"</code></p>
AC_RequireAzNone	Location	<p>Unsets the AC_RequireAz directive. Used to stop configuration inheritance for sub locations.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_RequireAzNone</code></p>
AC_IgnoreSlsLoginCookie	Location, Virtual Server	<p>NOTE: This directive is deprecated and should no longer be used.</p> <p>This directive no longer has any effect and can thus safely be removed.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>AC_IgnoreSlsLoginCookie "on" "off"</code></p> <p>Default is "off".</p>



Table 29: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AC_AllowSoapMethod	Location	<p>Defines the application authorization identifier (az) and the corresponding SOAP operations (as defined in the WSDL in the <operation> tag) which are either allowed (+) or denied (-) for a user having this authorization. The feature must only be used in conjunction with the RF_SF_SoapValidator and RF_SF_AllowService directives.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_AllowSoapMethod <authorisation> [+ -]<method> Example: AC_AllowSoapMethod customer +buy Inheritance: Use '+' or '-' signs to add or remove operation identifiers in sub-locations (definitions from parent context will be inherited). If any of the values are not prefixed by '+' nor '-', the settings of the current location overrides the upper location settings. Note: AC_AllowSoapMethod must only be specified for member and customer locations (see AC_AccessArea).</p>
AC_AllowSessionRegulation	Location	<p>Allow the application server to regulate certain settings on the user session via Session Attributes. At the moment only session timeout regulation (usage <i>ac-cred-tmo</i>) is supported. For more information see Session Timeout Parameter.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_AllowSessionRegulation <setting> Where <setting> can be <i>timeouts</i> or <i>off</i>. Example: AC_AllowSessionRegulation timeouts Inheritance: This setting will be inherited in sublocations. This behavior can be switched off by defining AC_AllowSessionRegulation Off.</p>

3.5.8.2 Post Data Storage Directives

Table 30: SRManager - Post Data Storage Directives

Directives	Validity	Description
AC_MaxPostStoreSize	Location	<p>Restricts the maximum number of bytes that the HSP saves when access is denied for a HTTP POST request.</p> <p>In this situation, the HSP stores POST data up to the specified size and "replays" the POST request after successful login. If this limit is exceeded, the HSP drops the POST data and the client has to send the POST data again after login.</p> <p>This value should not exceed SE_L1Cds_SMFileAndSize divided by 20. However, the maximal post size per client is limited to 35% of the free shared memory.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_MaxPostStoreSize <bytes> Default value is 49152</p>
AC_AnonymousPostStoreTimeout	Location	<p>Enables the POST data store for anonymous users (initial post) if value is greater than 0 seconds.</p> <p>Syntax: AC_AnonymousPostStoreTimeout <seconds> Default: 0 (disabled)</p>

3.5.8.3 Intra Access Module Directives



Directives	Validity	Description
AC_AllowIntraAccess	Virtual Server	Controls access to the SRM from Intranet Interface. Designed for a "SecureZone Gateway" configuration, this directive permits connections from the Intranet to the SRManager's virtual Host which implements the Secure- Zone Gateway. If using name based virtual servers, this directive must be set consistently on all virtual servers using the same host, otherwise the SRManager will not start up. Syntax: AC_AllowIntraAccess ON OFF Default value is "off"

3.5.9 SRManager - Request/Response Filter Directives

Table 32: SRManager - Request/Response Filter Directives

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RF_FakeServerName	Virtual Server	The server name returned in the HTTP header "Server". If not defined, the default "Secure Entry Server" is used. With the value %OFF the header "Server" coming from the back-end remains unchanged. Inheritance: A configured server name in the global scope is merged into the scope of virtual hosts. With the value %DEFAULT the server name in a virtual host can be reset to the default server name. Syntax: RF_FakeServerName <name>

3.5.10 SRManager - HTTP 1.1 Gateway



Table 33: SRManager - HTTP 1.1 Gateway

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Host	Location, Session Attribute	<p>Defines the server name and port ("host:port") to send the request to.</p> <p>"host:port" can be hard-coded or dynamically selected during runtime via environment variables (\$ENV.<name>), request header values (\$HDR.<header>) or Session Attributes sent by the Login Service (\$ACA). For failover, multiple servers can be specified, separated by semicolon or whitespace. If failover is not enabled and multiple hosts are specified, then only the first host is used. The DNS resolving policy is controlled by directive "HGW_DNSPolicy". When using an IPv6 address, host addresses must be enclosed in square brackets.</p> <p>There are some dependencies between this directive and HTTP server addressing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For HTTP requests, the HTTP host header of outgoing requests is set to the value specified with "HGW_Host". For "302 Moved Temporarily" responses: If the HTTP "Location" header sent by the backend application contains the same hostname as specified in "HGW_Host", the header is re-written with host and port of the corresponding SRManager's virtual host. This guarantees that application redirections are managed by HSP (as HttpListeners analogously re-writes the Location header as well). <p>Syntax: HGW_Host <host>:<port> \$ACA \$ENV.<variable> \$HDR.<name> (<host>:<port> \$ENV.<variable> \$HDR.<name>)* Example: "app1.com:8080" Example: "\$ACA" Example: "\$ENV.DYNAMIC_HOST \$HDR.DYNAMIC_HOST" Example: "192.168.9.2:8080 [fc00::cafe]:8080"</p> <hr/> <p>Note Can not be used in conjunction with the HGW_Balancer directive.</p> <hr/>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
<p>HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite</p>	<p>Virtual Server Location</p>	<p>All URLs in the body pointing to an internal location will be automatically rewritten to point to Hsp-ListenerUri. Syntax: HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite On Off Example: If Hsp-ListenerUri is set to: www.example.net:10443 and the connection uses ssl then the following URI will be replaced as follows http://backend1.local.net/foo/bar will become https://www.example.net:10443/foo/bar Configuration example (shows relevant settings only):</p> <pre><Location /foo/bar> HGW_Host backend1. ↵ local.net HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite on </Location> <Location /foo/bar/a> # HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite is set to on </Location> <Location /foo/bar/a/b> HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite off </Location> <Location /foo/bar/a/b/c> # HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite is set to off </Location></pre> <p>Precedence: The last <Location> overrides the earlier ones despite being less specific.</p>
<p>HGW_AutomaticHostRewriteContentType</p>	<p>Virtual Server Location</p>	<p>Allows to automatically rewrite URLs in document bodies other than text/html if directive HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite is enabled. If not defined, URLs will be rewritten only in documents with a content-type text/html. The setting of the current Location overrides the upper Location or VirtualHost setting. Syntax: HGW_AutomaticHostRewriteContentType <regex> Example:</p> <pre><Location /x> # enable URL rewrite in text/html ↵ documents HGW_AutomaticHostRewrite on # rewrite URLs in text/xml document as ↵ well HGW_AutomaticHostRewriteContentType text/ ↵ xml </Location> <Location /x/app> # rewrite URLs in text/html and json ↵ documents (overrides definition in Location /x) HGW_AutomaticHostRewriteContentType ↵ application/.*json </Location></pre>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
<p>HGW_Disable</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Allows to disable the HTTP 1.1 Gateway for a HGW-enabled sublocation. Use this, if you want a sublocation to be handled locally (i.e. not by the http_1_1_gw_handler), although its superlocation has HTTP 1.1 Gateway enabled.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Disable Example:</p> <pre><Location /x/y> SetHandler default HGW_Disable </Location></pre> <hr/> <p>Note This directive has to be used in conjunction with the SetHandler directive.</p>
<p>HGW_ForceHost</p>	<p>Location, Session Attribute</p>	<p>Forces the "Host:" header to the given value. Without this directive, the value is set according to the "HGW_Host" directive.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ForceHost <host_specification> [<host_specification>] ...</p> <p>If the directive value starts with '\$HEADER(' and ends with ')', the value of the header name enclosed in the parentheses will be copied to the "Host:" header. A single '\$' is interpreted as the "HSP_HTTPS_HOST:" header containing the name of the Https Listener.</p> <p>'\$LISTENER_HOST' uses similar to a single '\$' the "HSP_HTTPS_HOST" header value, but removes any port information.</p> <p>If "off" is specified, the default (from the "HGW_Host" directive) is used.</p> <p>If multiple values are defined, they will be used for the corresponding servers (same index) specified with "HGW_Host". If fewer host specifications than servers are specified, the first value specified with "HGW_ForceHost" is used.</p> <p>Examples: "HGW_ForceHost \$HEADER(Host)", "HGW_ForceHost \$"</p>
<p>HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Specifies whether the scheme of the location header on backend redirections is kept or not.</p> <p>Per default, the URI scheme is rewritten to the scheme of the received request.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme On Off Default: Off Example: HGW_KeepAsRedirectScheme On</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_RequestHeaders	Location	<p>A list of HTTP headers that are passed to the application server. Headers not in this list are stripped from the request. Entries starting with '%' are replaced with all headers defined for this alias. See directive "HGW_ShowAliases". Entries starting with '-' are removed from the list, entries prefixed with '+' are added.</p> <p>In addition, wildcards for header names can be specified, e.g. with "Foo*" all headers starting with the substring "Foo" are let through. A single star "*" allows to pass all headers to the back-end. In conjunction with wildcards single headers can be excluded with a preceding exclamation mark, e.g. !Foo2 ensures that the header Foo2 is withheld even though wildcards exists.</p> <p>Inheritance: Configuration values are merged to sub-locations. '+' adds and '-' removes headers from the merged configuration. If any of the values are not prefixed by '+' or '-', the settings of the current location overrides the setting of the parent location.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_RequestHeaders ['+' '-'] (('%<Alias> <Headers>[*])* *) !<Header> Example: %HTTP11_std -Referer !UserLoginData +Foo*</p>
HGW_Allow401	Location	<p>A value of "On" disables the default behavior of mapping an HTTP response code of 401 (Not Authorized) from the server to the code 500 (Server Error). A value of "RC=<n>" also avoids a server error, but changes the response code to the value <n> (allowed range is 200 to 599).</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Allow401 On Off RC=<n> Example: "HGW_Allow401 RC=403"</p>
HGW_AllowCustomStatusLine	Location	<p>Sometimes, an application server uses a non standard HTTP response line with a response code in defined by RFC2616. Such a response line get replaces by a "500 Internal Server Error" response line by default. You may allow any response codes using this directive.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_AllowCustomStatusLine On Off</p>
HGW_NoLoginUserDataHeaderUntil401	Location	<p>If set to "On", the Login-Credentials (UserData) header will not be sent to the application server, until it replies with an HTTP status code of "401 AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED". Once this happens, the request will be repeated (transparently for the client) <i>with</i> the Login-Credentials header. From then on, the Login-Credentials header will be sent with every request as usual (until the client logs out). This mimics the behavior of a browser regarding basic authentication.</p> <p>For POST requests with a content length over 8192 bytes, the Credentials header will always be sent.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_NoLoginUserDataHeaderUntil401 On Off</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_HandleStatusLocal	Virtual Server Location	<p>Specifies error responses sent by application server to be handled locally.</p> <p>For each location it is possible to add or remove status pages from the parent with a "+" or "-" prefix. If no prefix is specified then the parent values will be disabled for this location.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_HandleStatusLocal [+ -]<status>[:<local_status>]</p> <p>If specified, the error page with the specified error code sent by the application server is discarded and handled locally. If an error page is defined for this status, it will be display as if it was a local error. If <local_status> is specified, the applications status code is mapped to <local_status> before handling it.</p>
HGW_Proxy	Location	<p>Defines the hostname (or IP address) and port of the forward proxy via which to send the request.</p> <p>If SSL is enabled, a tunnel (HTTP CONNECT) is established to the forward proxy. When using an IPv6 address, the address must be enclosed in square brackets.</p> <p>For failover, multiple servers must be specified. However, if multiple servers are specified but failover is not enabled, only the first server specified is used.</p> <p>If both HGW_Proxy and HGW_Host are used for a location and HGW_Proxy is defined before HGW_Host, the DNS lookups for hosts defined in HGW_Host are skipped at startup.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Proxy <host>:<port> [<host>:<port>] . . .</p> <p>Example: "prox1.foo.com:8080 prox2.foo.com:8080"</p> <p>Example: "192.168.9.2:8080"</p> <p>Example: "[fc00::cafe]:8080"</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Balancer	Location	<p>Defines the name of a load balancer via which to distribute the requests.</p> <p>A load balancer with the given name must be defined with <code><Proxy balancer></code> on <code>VirtualHost</code> level. For details see the description to mod_hgw_balancer.</p> <p>Can be combined with one ore more forward proxies defined with <code>HGW_Proxy</code>.</p> <p>Inheritance: The usage of a specific balancer is merged to sublocations.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Balancer <name></p> <p>Example:</p> <pre><Proxy balancer://mybalancer> BalancerMember https://host1.com:443 BalancerMember https://host2.com:443 </Proxy> <VirtualHost 1.2.3.4:443> <Location /balanced> HGW_Balancer mybalancer HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL </Location> </VirtualHost></pre> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>Can not be used in conjunction with the <code>HGW_Host</code> directive.</p> <hr/>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect	Location	<p>Defines a dedicated URL to redirect to if a load balancer is in use and no backend is available.</p> <p>The URL can either be absolute, or relative. In case of a relative URL, the HSP redirects to the specified path on the same virtual host.</p> <p>The setting is inherited to sublocations. "off" allows to disable redirects in sublocations. If no load balancer is defined with HGW_Balancer the directive is ignored.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect <url> off</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre><VirtualHost 1.2.3.4:443> # redirect to 1.2.3.4:443/errorpage <Location /balanced/rel> HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect /errorpage </Location> <Location /balanced/abs> HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect https://www.u ↔ -s-p.ch </Location> <Location /balanced/rel/sub> HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect off </Location> </VirtualHost></pre> <p>Inheritance: Redirect URL is merged to sublocations.</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_EnableSSLServerCert	Location	<p>Use SSL when connecting to the server and ensure that the presented server certificate is signed by one the configured Certification Authority (CA=<ca-cert>). The directive VerifyDepth (by default set to '1') states the maximum depth of CA certificates in the server certificate verification. In order to allow any server certificate, configure the special value "ALLOW_ALL".</p> <p>Optionally, verify that either one of the CN attribute(s) of the certificate's subject or of the Subject Alternative Name (SAN) extension corresponds to the value configured by CN='<host-name>'. Multiple CN='<host-name>' are supported as well as dynamic declarations by use of environment or header variables. Also, if CRL paths are configured the server certificate is checked for revocation by use of present CRL files in the given directories.</p> <p>Use HGW_SslClientProtocol to define the protocol to use.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL [CA=<ca-cert>] [VerifyDepth=<depth>] [CN='<host-name>'] '\$ENV.<env-var>' '\$HDR.<header>'] [CRL=<crl-path>]</code></p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL HGW_EnableSSLServerCert CA=/path/to/ca.cert.pem VerifyDepth=5 HGW_EnableSSLServerCert CA=/path/to/ca.cert.pem CN='example.com' CN=\$ENV.VAR-NAME' HGW_EnableSSLServerCert CA=/path/to/ca.cert.pem CN='example.com' CN=\$HDR.HEADER-NAME' HGW_EnableSSLServerCert CA=/path/to/ca.cert.pem CRL_PATH=/path/to/crls</pre>
HGW_SSLConnectTimeOut	Location	<p>Sets the timeout for the SSL connection establishment. If the socket timeouts during the establishment an OpenSSL syscall error is returned.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HGW_SSLConnectTimeOut <seconds></code></p> <p>If this directive is not set the same timeout as for the TCP connection establishment is used. See HGW_ConnectTimeOut.</p>
HGW_DisableSSLServerCert	Location	<p>Disable SSL for a sub location (undo HGW_EnableSSLServerCert).</p>
HGW_ClientCert	Location	<p>Use the configured client certificate and private key ("CERT=<PEMfile> PKEY=<PEMfile>") for SSL client authentication if requested by the server.</p> <p>Example: "CERT=/opt/cert/client/client.PEM PKEY=/opt/pkey/client/clientkey.PEM"</p> <p>The private key must not be password protected.</p> <p>Settings are inherited to sub-locations. However, inheritance is inhibited if HGW_EnableSSLServerCert is set on a sub-location so that a re-definition becomes necessary.</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_ClientCertChain	Location	Allows to configure a PEM file with a chain of intermediate CA certificates which will be used for SSL client authentication, if the certificate configured with HGW_ClientCert is not directly signed by any CA in the given CA list in the server's CertificateRequest. Syntax: HGW_ClientCertChain <PEMfile> Settings are inherited to sub-locations. However, inheritance is inhibited if HGW_EnableSSLServerCert is set on a sub-location so that a re-definition becomes necessary.
HGW_SslClientProtocolDefault	Global, Virtual Server	Defines the default protocol to be used for sessions to the application server, when HGW_SslClientProtocol is not defined. Syntax: HGW_SslClientProtocolDefault TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2 TLSv1.3 any recent Default is TLSv1.2 "any" allows all Protocols "recent" allows only TLSv1.2 and TLSv1.3
HGW_SslClientProtocol	Location	Selects the protocol to be used for sessions to the application server. Important: This directive must be defined before HGW_EnableSSLServerCert to take. Syntax: HGW_SslClientProtocol TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2 TLSv1.3 any Default is as specified by HGW_SslClientProtocolDefault or TLSv1.2.
HGW_SslClientCipherSuite	Location	Selects the SSL ciphers to be used. Valid ciphers depend on the SSL protocol type (see HGW_SslClientProtocol). The optional protocol specifier can configure the cipher suite for a specific SSL version. "SSL" can be used for all SSL protocols up to and including TLSv1.2, whereas the protocol specifier "TLSv1.3" can be used to configure the cipher suite for TLSv1.3. Syntax: HGW_SslClientCipherSuite [<protocol>] <cipher-suite> Example 1: RSA:!EXP:!NULL:+HIGH:-MEDIUM:-LOW Example 2: DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA:DHE-DSS-AES256-SHA:AES256-SHA Example 3: TLSv1.3 TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384:TLS_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256 Note The command "openssl ciphers -<protocol>" can be used to get a list of available ciphers for the specific protocol.
HGW_SslStaticSession	Virtual Server, Location	Forces SSL sessions per server Syntax: HGW_SslStaticSession on off This setting increases performance but may confuse application servers since multiple clients share a single SSL session.
HGW_SSLHeaders	Location	This directive is only used in HttpsListener configuration, see there for details.



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_ForceSNI	Location, Session Attribute	<p>Allows to set the value of the TLS extension <i>Server Name Indication</i> independently of the Host header. Please see HGW_TlsUseSNI for details.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HGW_ForceSNI <host_specification> [<host_specification>] ...</code></p> <p>This directives supports all configuration options such as HGW_ForceHost: "off", "\$HEADER(<header-name>)", "\$ACA", "\$" (or "\$LISTENER_HOST"), as well as multiple values. Please see HGW_ForceHost for details.</p> <p>Example: <code>HGW_ForceSNI \$HEADER(Host) off</code> "forced-sni-value" Example: <code>HGW_ForceSNI \$ACA</code></p>
HGW_TlsUseSNI	Location	<p>Enables or disables the use of the TLS extension <i>Server Name Indication</i> on the backend connection configured with HGW_Host. If HGW_TlsUseSNI is set to "on" the SNI server name is the same as used in the Host header as configured with the HGW_Host or HGW_ForceHost directive. With HGW_ForceSNI the SNI server name can be set independently of the Host header. If HGW_TlsUseSNI is set to "off" the SNI extension is not used in the TLS handshake to the backend server.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HGW_TlsUseSNI on off</code> Default is "On".</p> <hr/> <p>Note</p> <p>The SNI extension is only available to TLS protocols, not to SSL protocols. If you want to use a SNI on the backend connection, make sure to also configure a TLS protocol using the directive HGW_SslClientProtocol or HGW_SslClientProtocolDefault.</p>
HGW_ShowAliases	Global	<p>Show all available header group alias definitions and exit. The following command prints all definitions to stdout:</p> <pre>%> bin/httpdctl start -args -C HGW_ShowAliases</pre>
HGW_Strict100Continue	Location	<p>"On" specifies, that the SRManager passes a HTTP "Expect: 100-continue" message to the application server and does not send a "100 Continue" response the client itself. If "Off" has been specified, the SRManager answer by a "100 Continue" response itself and suppress the message from the application server.</p> <p>Default is "off."</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_RequestBodyBuffer	Location	<p>Sets the buffer size for forwarding request bodies from client to application servers.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_RequestBodyBuffer <bytes></p> <p>This value affects request replaying. See section Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) for details.</p> <p>Default value is 8192 (i.e. 8 KB).</p> <p>Maximum allowed value is 209715200 (i.e. 200 MB).</p> <hr/> <p>Caution</p> <p> When increasing the maximum allowed request body buffer size keep in mind that the request body will be stored in memory during processing the request. Values larger than 1048576 (1 MB) are not recommended.</p> <hr/>
HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer	Location	<p>Sets the buffer size for forwarding response bodies from application servers to client.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer <bytes></p> <p>This value affects response analysis. See section Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) for details.</p> <p>Default value is 8192 (i.e. 8 KB).</p> <p>Maximum allowed value is 52428800 (i.e. 50 MB).</p> <hr/> <p>Caution</p> <p> When increasing the maximum allowed response body buffer size keep in mind that the response body will be stored in memory during processing the request. Values larger than 1048576 (1 MB) are not recommended.</p> <hr/>
HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush	Location	<p>Forces immediate data flush when the HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer bytes have been received.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <p>HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush on off</p> <p>Default is off, the Apache default (SendBufferSize) buffer size is used to determine when the data is sent to the client.</p>
HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking	Location	<p>If this directive is set to "on", HSP reads the response from the application server in non-blocking mode. This directive is required for OAW application integration. This directive only makes sense in combination with "HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush on".</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off"</p> <p>Default is Off</p>
HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking	Location	<p>If this directive is set to "on", HSP reads the request from client in non-blocking mode and will send it immediately to the application server.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off"</p> <p>Default is Off</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_ChunkedBuffering	Location	<p>If this directive is set to "off", HSP does not cache the received data from the application but will send it immediately to the client. Buffering is required if using AAI and body data is needed. The default buffer size is 8192 Bytes.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ChunkedBuffering Off</p> <p>Default is On</p>
HGW_OutConnectionExpiry	Location	<p>Controls the reuse (HTTP Keep-Alive) of outgoing HTTP connections to the application server. These are the maximum values. The SRManager tries to determine the optimal values based on the HTTP "Keep-Alive" response header received by the application server.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_OutConnectionExpiry [timeout=<secs>] [ttl=<secs>] [maxrequests=<n>]</p> <p>timeout specifies the maximum time in seconds after which an idle outgoing connection is reused. This value is the counter-part of the Apache Timeout directive.</p> <p>ttl specifies the life time of the connection. If the connect is older than this value, it is not reused for new requests.</p> <p>maxrequests specifies the maximum number of request to perform on a outgoing connection.</p> <p>Default values are timeout=10 ttl=30 maxrequests=300 respectively the values received from the application server.</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
<p>HGW_DNSPolicy</p>	<p>Virtual Server</p>	<p>Controls DNS lookup for outgoing connections Syntax: HGW_DNSPolicy <Startup Request></p> <p>Startup Causes DNS lookups at startup, once for each hostname specified in HGW_Host. If one or more hostnames could not be resolved, SRManager does not start. For each failed lookup, an error message is written to the log file.</p> <p>Request Causes DNS lookups for each request. A failed DNS lookup will result in HTTP status 500 being sent to the client and corresponding log messages written to the error log. Additionally, DNS lookup tests are made during startup in order to identify unresolvable hostnames. Upon lookup problems, error messages are written to the error log file.</p> <p>Default is value is Startup. Please note, that IPv6 is the preferred IP protocol version so that any hostname is first looked up for an IPv6 address. Only if the first lookup fails a second query for an IPv4 address is made. If a DNS lookup yields multiple IP addresses, then only the first address is tried to be connected.</p> <hr/> <p>Note For security, stability and performance reasons, the use of Request is NOT recommended.</p> <hr/>
<p>HGW_ConnectTimeout</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Within this time a configured server must accept the connection. Syntax: HGW_ConnectTimeout <seconds> If Fail-Over is enabled, HGW may try to connect multiple servers within this time. See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for details. Default value is 10 (seconds).</p>
<p>HGW_TimeOut</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Specifies timeout for requests and responses. Syntax: HGW_TimeOut <seconds> Depending on failover settings, the request may be retried on a different server when this time-out is reached. See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for details. Overrides the Apache "Timeout" directive. Default value: Value set by "Timeout" directive.</p>
<p>HGW_TransparentContentType</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Sets the HSP to content transparent mode handling. If an application server do not set a Content-Type the default behavior is that the apache does set a configured Content-Type. With this directive the apache does also not set a Content-Type Syntax HGW_TransparentContentType "On" "Off" Default is Off</p>



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_FO_Enable	Location	Enables or disables fail-over for this location. Syntax: HGW_FO_Enable <On Off> See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for the features controlled with this directive. Default value is "Off". The selected host can be logged in the access_log using the header "HSP_HgwHost".
HGW_FO_Idempotent	Location	Controls behavior if a server does not answer a request. Syntax: HGW_FO_Idempotent <On Off Switch> If set to "On" or "Switch", the request will be retried. "Switch" enforces retrying on the next configured server even if there was sticky information for the failed server. See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for details. Default value is "Off".



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
<p>HGW_FO_SelectRule</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Controls which server is selected depending on client request (including IP address, user agent, etc.). Selection takes place only if there is no sticky information.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_FO_SelectRule [<host>:<port> <index>] <source> "<regex pattern>" <type=HARD SOFT></p> <p>Sample:</p> <pre>HGW_FO_SelectRule as1.example.com:80 ↔ \$HEADER(HSP_CLIENT_ADDR) "^172\.24\.1\."</pre> <p><host>:<port> <index> defines the server to select if rule matches, either by host and port or by index. If using index, value 0 selects the first server specified in the host list.</p> <p><regex_pattern> defines extended regular expression to match. See "man -s 5 regex" for details.</p> <p><source> defines the data to match with the regular expression:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "\$HEADER("<header_name">)" selects header with name <header_name> to match with. All standard HTTP headers (see RFCHTTP1.1) as well as the HSP-specific headers HSP_CLIENT_ADDR and Hsp-ListenerUri can be used. • "\$REQUEST_LINE" line selects the URI and arguments, e.g. "/webapp/controller?action=test". <p><type> controls the stickiness of the selection:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "HARD" the client stays always on the selected server, even if the selected server becomes unavailable (fail-over is not done). Can be used for end-to-end monitoring of servers behind the SRManager • "SOFT" the client may be switched to another server depending on failure and fail-over settings. • "<index>" specifies the server in the server list where index 0 selects the first server specified. If HGW_Proxy directive does specify forward proxies between SES and application servers indexing becomes more complicated. A matrix is generated as follow: An is the n-th application servers in the server list and Pm is the m-th proxy server in the proxy server list A1:P1 → index 0 A1:P2 → index 1 ... A1:Pn → index n A2:P1 → index n+1 A2:P2 → index n+2 ... A2:Pn → index 2n <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See section "Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration" for details.



Table 33: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_FO_PenaltyCounter	Location	This directive defines the penalty count that is set on an unresponsive host. Hosts with a penalty are skipped for the number of requests set as penalty. Syntax: HGW_FO_PenaltyCounter <counter> Default value is 0 (no penalty).
HGW_FO_LoadBalancing	Location	Controls load balancing. Syntax: HGW_FO_LoadBalancing <On Off> If load balancing is enabled, load information returned by HTTP server responses is used to select backend servers for new clients. Load information can be communicated by back-end server to SRManager using the response header "HSP_SERVER_LOAD_INFO"; the header value must contain a numeric load value between 0 and 32000. Default value is 'Off' See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for details.
HGW_HostKey	Location	Advanced setting, used to build sets of servers which are independently managed by fail-over and connection management. Syntax: HGW_HostKey <key> <key> must contain alpha-numeric characters one. Example scenario: Two locations, both using the same server set (directive HGW_Host) but different server keys (this directive). This causes these two sets of server states managed separately. Default value is "default".
HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking	Location	If this directive is set "on" the HSP do read the response from the application server non-blocking. This directive is need for OAW application integration. This directive only makes sense in combination with " HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush on". Syntax: HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off" Default is Off
HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking	Location	If this directive is set "on" the HSP do read the request from client non-blocking and send it immediately to the application server. Syntax: HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking "On" "Off" Default is Off
HGW_ViaHeader	Location	If this directive is set to "off", HSP does not send the HTTP "Via" header to the application backend. Syntax: HGW_ViaHeader "On" "Off" Default is On

3.5.11 SRManager - Response Text Filter (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)



Table 34: SRManager - Response Text Filter (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)

Directives	Validity	Description
<p>HGW_ResFlt_Substitute</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Defines one or more search/replace patterns to be applied to every response body with content type of "text/html". Please note that any "charset" specification is ignored and compatible character sets are assumed. The patterns are literal strings (no regular expressions) and the body text is searched from left to right so that no loops are possible. If two patterns match, the one with the longer search pattern will take precedence.</p> <p>Environment Variables and AC Session Attributes can be used in the replacement string. To access these variables add \$ENV(<var-name>) resp. \$ACA(<attr-name>) to the intended position in the replacement string.</p> <p>In case a "Content-Length" header exists, its value is increased to the worst case (i.e., supposing that the entire body consists of patterns which maximize the length) and the difference will be appended to the body as padding spaces.</p> <p>Substitution may be disabled for a given response by including the header "HSP_NoResponseFiltering:".</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResFlt_Substitute <search-pattern> <replacement></p> <p>Example: "HGW_ResFlt_Substitute /domjava /dom1/domjava " (repeat the directive for multiple patterns)</p> <p>Note: If an already defined search pattern is redefined in a sublocation, the replacement of the first definition is taken due to inheritance. In order to overwrite the replacement the directive "HGW_ResFlt_InheritParent off" must be set.</p>
<p>HGW_ResFlt_SubstituteMatch</p>	<p>Location</p>	<p>Defines one or more search/replace patterns to be applied to every response body with a content type of "text/html" (any "charset" specification is ignored, i.e., compatible character sets are assumed). The patterns are regular expressions and the body text is searched from left to right, so that no loops are possible. If two patterns match, the nearest one will take precedence.</p> <p>Environment Variables and AC Session Attributes can be used in the replacement string. To access these variables add \$ENV(<var-name>) resp. \$ACA(<attr-name>) to the intended position in the replacement string.</p> <p>Substitution may be disabled for a given response by including the header "HSP_NoResponseFiltering:".</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResFlt_SubstituteMatch <regex-search-pattern> <replacement></p> <p>Example: "HGW_ResFlt_SubstituteMatch /domjava([0-9]+)/dom1/domjava\$1 " (repeat the directive for multiple patterns)</p> <p>Note: If an already defined search pattern is redefined in a sublocation, the replacement of the first definition is taken due to inheritance. In order to overwrite the replacement the directive "HGW_ResFlt_InheritParent off" must be set.</p> <p>Note: When using this directive, HGW_ResFlt_Padding will be automatically set to "off".</p>



Table 34: (continued)

Directives	Validity	Description
HGW_ResFltHtml_Substitute	Location	<p>Replaces the defined search string by the replace string in every html reference, e.g. href or src attribute. First matching rule is applied. Rule is only applied once. Pattern must match the beginning of the reference string. Applied for content type "text/html" only. Environment Variables and AC Session Attributes can be used in the replacement string. To access these variables add \$ENV(<var-name>) resp. \$ACA(<attr-name>) to the intended position in the replacement string.</p> <p>HGW_ResFltHtml_Substitute <search string> <replace string></p> <p>Example: HGW_ResFltHtml_Substitute /webapp</p> <p>Inheritance: The HGW_ResFltHtml_Substitute directives from upper locations are inherited by lower locations. Redefinition of the directive in lower locations replaces the definitions of upper locations.</p>
HGW_ResFltHtml_InheritParent	Location	<p>If set to "off", no location merging is performed, i.e., all "HGW_ResFltHtml_*" directives of parent locations are ignored. Default is "on".</p>
HGW_ResFlt_CaseSensitive	Location	<p>Allows to specify the mode of search pattern matching.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResFlt_CaseSensitive on off</p> <p>Default is "off"</p> <p>Examples: Search case sensitive: HGW_ResFlt_CaseSensitive on Search case insensitive: HGW_ResFlt_CaseSensitive off</p>
HGW_ResFlt_Padding	Location	<p>Controls whether response bodies should be padded or not. When enabling padding, the Content-Length of responses is increased in order to ensure that potential replacements fit into the response body. If the effective length of the response body is smaller than the estimated Content-Length, unused bytes are padded by 0x20 ("space"). The estimation of the Content-Length is based on a worst case calculation which always ensures that enough bytes are reserved. Please note that the estimation is optimized when using HGW_ResFlt_MaxOccurs. If padding is disabled, fixed-length responses (including static files) are converted into variable-length responses ("chunked" encoding). Padding only applies to response whose Content-Types matches one of the types defined by HGW_ResFlt_ContentTypes.</p> <p>Default is "on"</p> <p>Example: HGW_ReFlt_Padding on</p>
HGW_ResFlt_ContentTypes	Location	<p>Allows to specify the content types for which response filtering should be enabled. The default is "text/html".</p> <p>Example: HGW_ResFlt_ContentTypes text/html application/x-javascript</p> <p>Content Types specified in a parent location are inherited to its sub locations. To redefine the content types in a sub location "HGW_ResFlt_InheritParent off" must be set.</p>



Table 34: (continued)

Directives	Validity	Description
HGW_ResFit_MaxOccurs	Location	<p>Allows to control the maximum number of pattern replacements when response body padding is enabled ("HGW_ResFit_Padding on"). The configured number is also used to find an optimized estimation of the response body length, thus generally resulting in less padded bytes. However, in case the estimated content length should be too small, no more replacements are performed for the remainder of the response and the increase of the number might become necessary.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_ResFit_MaxOccurs <n> Example: "HGW_ResFit_MaxOccurs 20" Please note that the maximum number of pattern replacements can not be applied if response padding is not enabled.</p>
HGW_ResFit_InheritParent	Location	<p>If set to "Off", no location merging is performed, i.e., all "HGW_ResFit_*" directives of parent locations are ignored. Default is "on".</p> <p>Example: "HGW_ResFit_InheritParent off"</p>

3.5.12 SRManager - Path Translation (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)

Table 35: SRManager - Path Translation (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_TranslatePath	Location	<p>Allows to map a frontend application path to the application path of the backend by defining one or more search/replace patterns to be applied to the URL (without parameters) of every request and to path values of response headers (Location header, Set-Cookie headers). The patterns are literal strings (no regular expressions) and the URL path is searched from left to right. If multiple patterns match, the last match according to the order of the configuration is applied. The replacement pattern can use environment variables and AC Session Attributes. The syntax to access these variables is \$ENV(<var-name>) or \$ACA(<attribute-name>).</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_TranslatePath <search-pattern> <replacement> Example: "HGW_TranslatePath /frontend/path /path/to/backend/application" "HGW_TranslatePath /frontend/path /path/to/\$ENV(application)" (repeat the directive for multiple patterns)</p>
HGW_TranslatePathMatch	Location	<p>Analogue to HGW_TranslatePath but uses a regular expression for the search parameter.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_TranslatePathMatch <search-regex-pattern> <replacement> [<option>] Note: Option ICASE for case insensitive matching can be set optionally. Default is case sensitive matching. Example: HGW_TranslatePathMatch /frontend/([0-9]+)/path/to/\$1</p>



Table 35: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_TranslateRequestBody	Environment Variable	<p>Enables translation of request body parameters.</p> <p>HGW_TranslateParameters can be used to specify patterns for translation.</p> <p>Syntax: SetEnvIf <attribute><regex> HGW_TranslateRequestBody</p> <p>Example: SetEnvIf Content-Type text/html HGW_TranslateRequestBody</p>
HGW_TranslateParameters	Location	<p>Defines one or more search/replace patterns to be applied to the URL parameters of every request. The patterns are literal strings (no regular expressions) and the URL's parameter (query) string is searched from left to right. If two patterns match, the longer one will take precedence. Replacements are performed until the end of the string is reached.</p> <p>Environment variables and AC Session Attributes can be used in the replacement string. To access these variables \$EVN(<var-name>) or \$ACA(<attr-name>) can be used.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_TranslateParameters <search-pattern> <replacement></p> <p>Example: "HGW_TranslateParameters /replace/this /by/that" (repeat the directive for multiple patterns)</p> <p>With SetEnvIf you can activate also request body translation.</p> <p>Syntax: SetEnvIf <attribute> <regex> HGW_TranslateRequestBody</p>
HGW_TranslateParametersMatch	Location	<p>Analogue to HGW_TranslateParameters but uses a regular expression for the search parameter.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_TranslateParametersMatch <search-regex-pattern> <replacement> [<option>]</p> <p>Note: Option ICASE for case insensitive matching can be set optionally. Default is case sensitive matching.</p> <p>Example: HGW_TranslateParametersMatch /replace/([a-zA-Z0-9]+)/by/\$1/</p>
HGW_InheritTranslation	Location	<p>Allows to control location merging of path translation directives. "off" disables merging.</p> <p>Default: "on"</p> <p>Example: "HGW_InheritTranslation off"</p>

3.5.13 SRManager - AAI (HTTP 1.1 Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Aai_AddRule	Location	<p>Adds an AAI rule to the current location.</p> <p>Syntax: HGW_Aai_AddRule <rule></p> <p>See section Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) for details.</p>



Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401	Location	Enforces redirection to configured login services if application server sends a HTTP status 401 response. Syntax: HGW_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401 This directive has dependencies to other HGW_ and HGW_Aai_ directives. See section Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) for details. Default is disabled Inheritance: no inheritance. All HGW_Aai_ directives from upper locations must be re-specified in lower locations.
HGW_Aai_ReplayOnLogin	Location	This directive may be set in the login server location (identified by the AC_StartPage directive). It is used in conjunction with the AC_InternalLoginRedirect directive and allows transparent user authentication without any HTTP redirects (302). If this directive is switched on, the SRManager detects a 302 responses coming from the login server setting the AccessArea. It stops these responses and re-initiates the initial request from the client against the target server. Syntax: HGW_Aai_ReplayOnLogin on off Inheritance: no inheritance. All HGW_Aai_ directives from upper locations must be re-specified in lower locations.
HGW_Aai_TraceActions	Location	This directive defines whether AAI actions (like request generating, request replay, etc.) are traced or not. If tracing is enabled, for each action a message is written to the error_log with log level "info". Default is not enabled ("off"). Syntax: HGW_Aai_TraceActions on off
HGW_Aai_NtlmActivate	Location	This directive activates/deactivates NTLM authentication to application server. The USP Secure Entry Server® automatically handles 401 responses if the required AC attributes (username and password) are available. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmActivate On Off Default is "Off"
HGW_Aai_NtlmDomain	Location	This directive defines a user domain. SLS can overwrite the user domain with AC attributes (see directive HGW_Aai_NtlmDomainACA). Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmDomain <domain-name> No default.
HGW_Aai_NtlmWorkstation	Location	This directive defines a workstation name. SLS can overwrite the workstation name with AC attributes (see directive HGW_Aai_NtlmWorkstationACA). Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmWorkstation <domain-name> No default.
HGW_Aai_NtlmUsernameACA	Location	This directive set the AC attribute name which contains the username send from SLS. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmUsernameACA <username-ac-attr> Default is "FormUsername".
HGW_Aai_NtlmPasswordACA	Location	This directive set the AC attribute name which contains the password send from SLS. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmPasswordACA <password-ac-attr> Default is "FormPassword".



Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Aai_NtlmDomainACA	Location	This directive set the AC attribute name which contains the user domain send from SLS. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmDomainACA <domain-ac-attr> Default is "Domain".
HGW_Aai_NtlmWorkstationACA	Location	This directive set the AC attribute name which contains the workstation name send from SLS. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmWorkstationACA, <workstation-ac-attr> Default is "Workstation".
HGW_Aai_NtlmUseUnicode	Location	Do request application server for un-coded strings within the NTLM messages. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmUseUnicode On Off Default is "Off".
HGW_Aai_NtlmUseNtlmV1	Location	This directive switch on NTLM hashes instead of NTLMv2 hashes. This could be useful for older Windows Server which do not support NTLMv2 hashes. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmUseNtlmV1 On Off Default is "Off".
HGW_Aai_NtlmForceMessageIntegrity	Location	This directive forces the use of NTLM message integrity. This could be useful for servers that require it but that are not recognized automatically. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmForceMessageIntegrity On Off Default is "Off", i.e. message integrity is only used when the server is recognized to support it.
HGW_Aai_NtlmProbe	Location	If set to "On", a request with a body will be send without body to probe for NTLM authentication and resend after NTLM handshake is done. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmProbe On Off Default is "On".
HGW_Aai_NtlmProbeInit	Location	If set to "On", a request with a body will be send without body but with the initial NTLM message and resend after NTLM handshake is done. This is how IE behaves. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmProbeInit On Off Default is "On".
HGW_Aai_NtlmProbeType	Location	If set to "Request", probing without request body is done every request. If set to "Connection", probing without request body is done every connection. This directive has only effect if HGW_Aai_NtlmProbe is "On". Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmProbeType Request Connection Default is "Request".
HGW_Aai_NtlmInheritParent	Location	If set to "Off", no location merging is performed. Syntax: HGW_Aai_NtlmInheritParent On Off Default is "On".
HGW_Aai_KerberosAuth	Location	Activates/deactivates Kerberos authentication to application server. As default, Kerberos authentication is not active. The CCACHEID allows to define a unique ID for used credential caches which can also be empty. HGW_Aai_KerberosAuth <on off> CCACHEID=<id>
HGW_Aai_KerberosUsernameACA	Location	Sets the AC attribute name which contains the username send from the SLS. Default is "FormUserName". HGW_Aai_KerberosUsernameACA <username-aca>



Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HGW_Aai_KerberosPasswordACA	Location	Sets the AC attribute name which contains the password send from the SLS. Default is "FormPassword". HGW_Aai_KerberosPasswordACA <password-aca>
HGW_Aai_KerberosServiceName	Location	This directive sets the application server's service name to be used. Default is "HTTP". HGW_Aai_KerberosServiceName <service>
HGW_Aai_KerberosRealm	Location	Allows to specify one or more Kerberos realms that should be used for client authentication. If not set the default realm is taken from the local Kerberos configuration. HGW_Aai_KerberosRealm <realm> [<realm>, ...]
HGW_Aai_KerberosGssRequestFlags	Location	Allows to set GSS request flags that are used for the establishment of the security context. NONE disables all flags. As default the flags MUTUALAUTH, REPLAY and SEQUENCE are set. HGW_Aai_KerberosGssRequestFlags MUTUALAUTH REPLAY SEQUENCE DELEGATION NONE
HGW_Aai_KerberosCredentialsLifetime	Virtual Server	Sets the lifetime of credentials (TGT and service tickets). Default is 5 minutes. Minimum is 1 minute. HGW_Aai_KerberosCredentialsLifetime <minutes>
HGW_Aai_KerberosCredentialCacheDir	Virtual Server	Allows to specify the directory path where credential caches should be stored. Default is /tmp. HGW_Aai_KerberosCredentialCacheDir <path>
HGW_Aai_ActionOnEmptySetCookieValue	Location	Action to take if the application server tries to set a cookie with an empty value. Possible values are "reject" (make no changes to cookies), "accept" (set cookie with empty value) and "delete" (delete cookie). Syntax: ActionOnEmptySetCookieValue reject accept delete Default is reject plus an error is logged when there is an attempt to set a cookie with an empty value (for backwards compatibility).

3.5.14 SRManager - Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI)

Table 37: SRManager - Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
ACI_AddRule	Location	Adds an ACI rule to the current location. Syntax: ACI_AddRule <rule> See section " Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI) " for further details.
ACI_RemoveRule	Location	Removes a predefined rule from the current location. This also stops the inheritance of the rule. Syntax: ACI_RemoveRule <rule_id>

3.5.15 SRManager - AAS



Table 38: SRManager - AAS

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AAS_ApplicationType	Location	Activates the application specific security features. Syntax: AAS_ApplicationType sap

3.5.16 SRManager - SSL Gateway

Table 39: SRManager - SSL Gateway

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
SGW_Host	Virtual Server	Enables SSL Gateway by defining the hostname (or IP address) and port of the backend server where incoming SSL streams (of the HttpsListener) should be streamed to. When using an IPv6 address, the address must be enclosed in square brackets. Syntax: SGW_Host <host>:<port> Example: "app1.com:4443" Example: "192.168.9.2:4443" Example: "[fc00::cafe]:4443" Default: No default
SGW_ConnectTimeout	Location	Within this time, a configured server must accept the connection. Syntax: SGW_ConnectTimeout <seconds> If fail-over is enabled, hgw may try to connect multiple servers within this time. See section Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration for details. Default value is 10 (seconds).
SGW_TimeOut	Virtual Server	Specifies idle timeout for the connection. Syntax: SGW_TimeOut <seconds> OFF Default value: 3600 seconds
SGW_FinalTimeout	Virtual Server	Specifies the overall timeout for the SGW connection. If set to 0 means no final timeout. Syntax: SGW_FinalTimeout <seconds> Default on final timeout is set
SGW_CleanShutDownTmo	Virtual Server	A special timeout to give the streaming threads the possibility to shutdown clean if one Side (client or backend) shuts down the connection. Syntax: SGW_CleanShutDownTmo <seconds> Default: 5 seconds
SGW_SSLServerCert	Virtual Server	Ensure that the presented server certificate is signed by the configured Certification Authority ("CA=<PEMfile>"). In order to allow any server certificate, configure the special value "ALLOW_ALL". Syntax: SGW_SSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL CA=<PEMfile> Examples: "ALLOW_ALL", "CA=/opt/allowed/ca1.PEM" Default: is ALLOW_ALL

3.5.17 SRManager - ICA (SSL Gateway)



Table 40: SRManager - ICA (SSL Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
ICA_Activate	Virtual Server	Activates ICA protocol detection over SSL Gateway. Syntax: ICA_Activate on off Example: "on" Default: off
ICA_SMFileAndSize	Global	Defines the shared memory file and size of the shared memory. Syntax: ICA_SMFileAndSize </path/to/file(size) Example: /foo/bar(123456789) Default: no default.
ICA_TicketTmo	Virtual Server	Defines the lifetime of a one way ICA ticket. Syntax: ICA_TicketTmo <time in seconds> Example: 3 Default: 10 seconds
ICA_TicketParam	Virtual Server	Defines the ticket parameter name in the launch.ica file. Syntax: ICA_TicketParam <ticket-parameter-name> Example ICA_TicketParam Foobar Default: Address
ICA_TicketGet	Location	Defines if we get the ICA Ticket in a location or not. Syntax: ICA_TicketGet on off Example ICA_TicketGet on Default: off

3.5.18 SRManager - CSG (SSL Gateway)

Table 41: SRManager - CSG (SSL Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
CSG_Activate	Virtual Server	Activates Citrix Secure Gateway (CSG) protocol over SSL Gateway. Syntax: CSG_Activate on off Example: "on" Default: off
CSG_StaHost	Virtual Server	Defines the mapping between the Secure Ticket Authority ID and host and port. Syntax: CSG_StaHost <STA_ID> <host>:<port> Example: "STA01 192.168.1.34:8080"
CSG_StaXmlReqTemplate	Virtual Server	Defines the Secure Ticket Authority xml request template file to be able to adapt different versions of Secure Ticket Authority servers. Syntax: CSG_StaXmlReqTemplate <File> Example: "StaRequest.xml"



Table 41: (continued)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
CSG_StaXmlResPsRegex	Virtual Server	<p>Defines a regular expression to cut host and port of the Presentation Server from the XML answer from the Secure Ticket Authority (STA) server. The regular expression must contain one or more (up to five) capturing groups. Multiple capturing groups can be helpful to use same regular expression with different XML responses (depending on Citrix version).</p> <p>Syntax: CSG_StaXmlResPsRegex <regex><group><regex> [<regex><group><regex>]</p> <p>Example: "<Foo>(.*)</Foo>"</p> <p>Default: "<Value name=\"ICAAddress\">(.*)</Value> <Data>(.*)</Data>"</p> <p>Note: The default regular expression is applicable to responses from STA servers with versions 1 to 4.</p>
CSG_StaConnectTimeOut	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the timeout to build up a connection to the Secure Ticket Authority server.</p> <p>Syntax: CSG_StaConnectTimeOut <seconds></p> <p>Example: "5"</p> <p>Default: "10"</p>
CSG_StaTimeOut	Virtual Server	<p>Defines the idle timeout for the connection to Secure Ticket Authority server.</p> <p>Syntax: CSG_StaTimeOut <seconds></p> <p>Example: "10"</p> <p>Default: "30"</p>
CSG_InitialBytePattern	Virtual Server	<p>Adds or removes the hexadecimal byte pattern from/to the accepted initial byte patterns used by the client to initiate a CSG handshake. By default, the standard patterns 0x05 0x02 0x00 0x80 and 0x05 0x01 0x80 are set globally and inherited to virtual hosts. For each virtual hosts these patterns can be excluded (using "-") or extended by prefixing a new pattern with "+". Without any sign, the list of accepted patterns is cleared and the corresponding pattern is the first one added.</p> <p>Please note, that the byte notation uses the "\x" hexadecimal prefix.</p> <p>Syntax: CSG_InitialBytePattern [+ -]<pattern></p> <p>Example how to remove the default pattern 0x05 0x02 0x00 0x80: "\x05\x02\x00\x80"</p> <p>Example how to use two specific patterns without default patterns: "\x01\x02\x03 +\x04\x05\x06"</p> <p>Default: "\x05\x02\x00\x80 +\x05\x01\x80"</p>

3.5.19 SRManager - RPC (SSL Gateway)

Table 42: SRManager - CSG (SSL Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
RPC_Activate	Virtual Server	<p>Activates RPC protocol detection over SSL Gateway.</p> <p>Syntax: RPC_Activate on off</p> <p>Example: "on"</p> <p>Default: off</p>



3.5.20 SRManager - Lua (SSL Gateway)

Table 43: SRManager - Lua (SSL Gateway)

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
LGW_LuaScript	Virtual Server	<p>This directive enables a lua script on specified place. With these scripts you can write an own protocol handler in Lua. This is useful, if i.e. citrix protocol do have changes, which our static implementation can't handle.</p> <p>Syntax: LGW_LuaScript <i>Pre</i> <i>Resolve</i> <i>Post</i> <script-path></p> <p>Pre</p> <p>Only client connections is build up</p> <p>Resolve</p> <p>The Lua script must return a host:port string. If "SGW_Host \$HOST" is configured, the returned host:port is the server host we then connect to.</p> <p>Post</p> <p>Client and server connection are established.</p> <p>Default is no Lua script at all.</p>

3.5.21 SRManager - Airlock API

Table 44: SRManager - Airlock API

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
AA_ControlCookie	Location	<p>Activates the Airlock API and specifies the cookie name which holds the Airlock control API.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_ControlCookie <cookie-name></p> <p>Example: "DEA_CONTROL"</p>
AA_EnvCookiePrefix	Location	<p>Defines prefix of the Airlock environment cookie name.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_EnvCookiePrefix <cookie-prefix></p> <p>Example: "DEA_ENV"</p>
AA_MemberRole	Location	<p>Defines which roles are mapped to member. Multiple roles may be specified by multiple arguments.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_MemberRole <role></p> <p>Example: "dea"</p>
AA_CustomerRole	Location	<p>Defines which roles are mapped to customer. Multiple roles may be specified by multiple arguments.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_CustomerRole <role></p> <p>Example: "dea"</p>
AA_SessionInvalidateAll	Location	<p>Invalidate all client session on a Airlock logout request from Application instead of Invalidate session of current location.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_SessionInvalidateAll on off</p> <p>Example: "on"</p> <p>Default: off</p>
AA_ApplicationAttrAllow	Location	<p>Defines that applications may also allowed to set or overwrite session attributes.</p> <p>Syntax: AA_ApplicationAttrAllow on off</p>



3.5.22 SRManager - Monitor

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
MO_MeasureInterval	Global	Interval for the active backend connectivity monitor. Syntax: MO_MeasureInterval <seconds> Default is 0 (off)
MO_ConnectTimeout	Global	Timeout for TCP connectivity tests. MO_ConnectTimeout <seconds> Default are 3 seconds.

3.5.23 SRManager - Request Limitations

See section "[Http\(s\)Listener - Request Limitations](#)" for a list of all available commands.

3.5.24 SRManager - Parameter Parser

See section "[Http\(s\)Listener - Parameter Parser](#)" for a list of all available commands about the built-in parameter parser.

3.5.25 SRManager - Info Portal

Table 46: SRManager - Info Portal

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
HSPI_ExtendedStatus	Virtual Server	Controls data collection used for extended status information (request table). If HSPI_ExtendedStatus is set to "On", the server collects system information on every request. For highest performance, set HSPI_ExtendedStatus "Off". Syntax: HSPI_ExtendedStatus "On" "Off" Default is off.
HSPI_StatFile	Virtual Server	Info portal shows graph based on logstat data. Multiple entries are possible (different stat log files or multiple parameter names). Can only be used in conjunction with status log files written by the logstat utility, see section " Logging of Request Statistic Data ". Syntax: HSPI_StatFile <path> <param> Example: HSPI_StatFile /var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/stat_log r/s
HSPI_ServerInstances	Virtual Server	Info portal allows access to the server configuration files defined by this directive. Syntax: HSPI_ServerInstances <instance> Example: HSPI_ServerInstances srm srm1 hts

3.5.26 SRManager - Debug Trace



Table 47: SRManager - Debug Trace

Directives (SRManager)	Validity	Description
mod_analyze	Env Variable	If this environment variable is set and a corresponding defined trace log file with DBG_TraceLog is set the following will be recorded request line and headers. The recording points are original request, request after rewrite and request after session cookies are stored in CD store. Example: SetEnvIf Request_URI "/test" mod_analyze
mod_analyze_body	Env Variable	If this environment variable is set, analyzer does record body if allowed with DBG_TraceAllowBody . Example: SetEnvIf Request_URI "/test" mod_analyze_body
DBG_TraceAllowBody	Global Virtual Server	If this is set to "on" body recording is allowed. Syntax: DBG_TraceAllowBody on off Example: DBG_TraceAllowBody on
DBG_TraceLog	Virtual Server	This directive defines the file to write the captured data to. Syntax: DBG_TraceLog <path> Example: "/opt/usp/hsp/hts/logs/trace"
DBG_TraceControl	Global	Defines the parameter input file for DBG_TraceLog . If present, TraceLogging is enabled. Syntax: DBG_TraceControl <file> Control File do have multiple lines of rules: [path=<path>] [srcip=<ip>] [cc=<string>] [tracebody=on off] All elements in a line are optional and are AND combined. All lines are OR combined.
DBG_TraceCtlRefreshTime	Virtual Server	Sets the refresh time (in seconds) to update/re-read the TraceControl file. Syntax: DBG_TraceCtlRefreshTime <seconds>
DBG_TraceDropHeader	Virtual Server, Location	If this directive is activated, all headers and cookies which are silently dropped, are logged in the error log. Syntax: DBG_TraceDropHeader On Off Example DBG_TraceDropHeader On Default: "Off"

3.6 HSP specific headers

A set of specific HSP headers are added to requests during processing in order to send request-, connection- or session-related informations to backend servers. The following list shows all HSP specific headers.

Table 48: HSP parameters passed in HTTP headers

Header	Description
ClientCorrelator	This identifier is unique per client session and can therefore be used to correlate data within a client's session. Syntax: "ClientCorrelator:" SP data data = *(<TEXT>) Example: ClientCorrelator: ItuSEBc2ZeJ5YbJ+1 ↔ G_u4j1lBt fMDsByC1vrWw\$\$



Table 48: (continued)

Header	Description
RequestCorrelator	<p>This identifier is unique per request and can be used to correlate a request's data over different components.</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>"RequestCorrelator:" SP data data = *(<TEXT>)</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>RequestCorrelator: icfr-hsl-2002.01.11_1508.27.060-001</pre>
ConnectionCorrelator	<p>This identifier is used to correlate requests with a client TCP connection (multiple requests over the same connection when using HTTP keep-alive).</p> <p>Syntax:</p> <pre>"ConnectionCorrelator:" SP data data = *(<TEXT>)</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>ConnectionCorrelator: 8167281265628397</pre>
HSP_CLIENT_ADDR	<p>Numeric IP address of the client.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>HSP_CLIENT_ADDR: 172.17.4.123</pre>
Hsp-ListenerUri	<p>Server part of the Listener URI as seen by the client. Contains protocol specification, host and optional port. Port is supplied if client has explicitly requested a specific port.</p> <p>Syntax: <protocol>://<host>[:<port>]</p> <p>Examples:</p> <pre>https://frontend.example.ch http://frontend.example.ch http://frontend.example.ch:8080</pre>

3.7 SSL Headers

The HttpsListener uses a set of HTTP Headers to forward the SSL Connection attributes such as cipher strength or X.509 client certificates.

The headers have to be enabled using the configuration directive HGW_SSLHeaders (SRMGW_SSLHeaders for deprecated SRM Gateway)

See the table below for a list of available headers:

Table 49: SSL parameters passed in HTTP headers

Parameter	Description	Example
SSLSessionID	<p>The SSL Session ID, hex encoded.</p> <p>Since handling of SSL Session is client depended, the session id should not be used as an session.</p>	SSLSessionID: 0334F60D...46EFD9E0



Table 49: (continued)

Parameter	Description	Example
SSLSessionAge	The age of the current SSL Session in seconds. Internally used by HSP for SSL Session ID Lock. See "5.5.4.4 External Session Representation - SslSid". Subject to change, must not be used by applications.	SSLSessionAge 123
SSLSessionTimeLeft	Time left in seconds before session is removed from HttpsListener's SSL Session cache. Interllay used by HSP for SSL Session ID Lock. See "5.5.4.4 External Session Representation - SslSid". Subject to change, must not be used by applications.	SSLSessionTimeLeft 35123
HTTPS	"on" if the client has connected using SSL (HTTPS).	HTTPS: on HTTPS: off
SSLClientAuth	"on" if client authentication was used during handshake (i.e. client presented his certificate to the server)	SSLClientAuth: on SSLClientAuth: off
SSLCipher	The actual cipher used for this connection. See [MOD_SSL] for possible values.	SSLCipher: IDEA-CBC-MD5
SSLCipherKeySize	The cipher's key size in bits	SSLCipherKeySize: 128
SSLProtocolVersion	The SSL protocol version. See [MOD_SSL] for possible values.	SSLProtocolVersion: TLSv1.2
SSLSubjectDN	The subject distinguished name of the current client certificate	SSLSubjectDN: /O=VeriSign, Inc./OU=VeriSign Trust Network/OU=www.verisign.com/repository/RPA Incorp. by Ref.,LIAB.LTD(c)98/OU=Persona Not Validated/OU=Digital ID Class 1 - Microsoft/CN=Peter Muster/Email=peter.muster@beispiel.ch
SSLIssuerDN	The issuer distinguished name of the current client certificate	SSLIssuerDN: /O=VeriSign, Inc./OU=VeriSign Trust Network/OU=www.verisign.com/repository/RPA Incorp. By Ref.,LIAB.LTD(c)98/CN=VeriSign Class 1 CA Individual Subscriber-Persona Not Validated
SSLSerialNumber	The serial number of the current client certificate. Hex encoded string.	SSLSerialNumber: 69371ECEF3DC433BA5905BD6DD058140
SSLFingerprint	The fingerprint of the current client certificate. Hex encoded string. The message-digest-algorithm used to compute the fingerprint value may be defined by HGW_SSLFingerprintDigest directive. If not defined, md5 will be used.	SSLFingerprint: B70C0CEAAF964C44EEADB43AC3D6269A
SSLCertificate	The current client certificate, PEM and HEX encoded.	SSLCertificate: 308204A4...CF605429
SSLJA3	The current client JA3 string, recorded on client_hello	SSLJA3: 769,47-53-5...19-4,0-10-11,23-24-25,0
SSLJA3Fingerprint	The current client JA3 Fingerprint	SSLJA3Fingerprint: 30893ccf124072ebfe6bfa78374d7d13



4 Configuration Guide

4.1 Introduction

This chapter contains configuration notes on various functions of the HSP components and notes on possible problems when setting up HSP.

4.1.1 Merging Location Definitions

To keep the configuration manageable and to reduce redundancy, the HSP allows directory merging in the location definitions. A directive that occurs inside a *<Location>* container applies to requests that get mapped to that URI. It is also applied to any location beneath it. That means, that if a directive applies to the location `"/main"`, it also applies to `"/main/app01"`. A directive applies to all areas within and beneath its scope.

If the same directive appears, with different values, at some subordinate scope, the definitions are merged as follows:

- **Overrides**
The child location (deeper location) setting dominates (overrides) the parent location. This happens only, if the directive is explicitly defined for the specific location.
- **Merging**
The settings are combined. Only a few directives allow combining, e.g. *HGW_RequestHeaders* .

4.1.2 Sample Configuration Files

Sample configurations files are generated during the installation process and are located in `"conf.tmpl/httpd.conf"` of each component.

4.1.3 Placement of Configuration- and Log-Files

Files should not be placed outside of their designated directories. Not obeying this rules causes tools like the HSP Operator or the snapshot utility not to work properly. Further, placing files outside of these standard directories may have severe security impacts.

The HSP Manager searches for files starting with `"access_log"` and `"error_log"` in the standard log directories which are `"/var/opt/usp/hsp/<component>/logs"` and `"/var/opt/usp/hsp/<component>/logs/ssl"`. If using per-virtual server logs, do not place log files into sub directories, use file name `"access_log<server name>"` or `"error_log<server name>"`.

Do not share any files between the HSP components. Sharing files will cause severe security impacts since the B1 compartments will be compromised.

4.2 Using Third Party Modules in HttpsListener

4.2.1 Limitations in mod_ssl

`mod_ssl` provides TLSv1.x support for the listener. SSLv2 and SSLv3 are no longer supported.



4.2.2 Setting the number of TLSv1.3 session tickets

`mod_ssl` has been patched for the `HttpsListener` to allow configuration of the number of TLSv1.3 session tickets issued by OpenSSL during connection establishment. The directive available for this purpose is named `SSLSessionTicketsNumber`, which accepts a single (positive) integer argument specifying the desired number of tickets. By setting 0 (zero), it is possible to suppress any ticket from being sent to clients.

Please note: This patch is exclusively available for the `HttpsListener` and is not part of the official `mod_ssl` distribution.

For more details on the underlying OpenSSL functionality, please refer to:
https://docs.openssl.org/3.1/man3/SSL_CTX_set_num_tickets.

4.3 Using Third Party Modules in SRM

4.3.1 Limitations

Apache's DSO support is enabled and supported by the SRM. However, some restrictions given by the Apache architecture apply.

Some modules allow only one version loaded in a single Apache instance and do not offer backward compatibility. In such a case, it is not possible to access two different versions of an application server requiring each a specific version of Apache module.

In this case, the application server should be accessed using the HTTP 1.1 Gateway. If the listener of the application server supports HTTP 1.1 with "Keep-Alive", this should not cause a noticeable performance drawback, in some cases this might even create a performance increase.

4.3.2 Using Binary Distributions

Use only shared objects which are compiled with Apache using `mod_ssl`. Do not use modules which do not support `mod_ssl` since they may crash when running in SRM which uses `mod_ssl` extensions.

4.3.3 Using Source Distributions

Some third party module require compilation with the target Apache version. In this case, you have to compile them using the current Apache and `mod_ssl` version.

Use the following command to get the current apache and `mod_ssl` versions and compiler settings used by the SRM.

```
# /bin/strings /opt/usp/hsp/srm/bin/httpd | grep mod_ssl  
# /opt/usp/hsp/srm/bin/httpd -V
```

4.3.4 Deployment Instructions

- Place the shared library and other binary files into the "libexec" directory of the SRM.
- Place additional configuration files into the "conf" directory of the SRM.

4.4 Session Management

The SRM distinguishes basically between three different session types.



Table 50: Session Types

Name	Attribute	Description
Type 0 Client Session	Description	Per-client data. Stores type 1 and type 2 session data.
	Storage	Data is stored in the session store of SRM.
	External Representation	SCDID is encrypted and symmetric signed (HMAC) client data identifier which is either stored as a cookie or in the URL. The SSL session id can also be used to represent type 0 session. See section " External Session Representations (ESR) ".
	Session Creation	Automatically, if a client does not have a valid SCDID, a new SCDID is generated and sent to this client.
	Cardinality	One Instance per client (Web browser).
	Time-out	Inactivity- and final time-out causes the client session to be deleted. Global logout or an access violation can also cause session closing. Time-out is controlled by the following directive: SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut , SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut , SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut , and SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounter . Changes to these directives require a restart of the SRM.
Type 1 HSP Session (Authentication Session)	Description	Authorizes access for a specific access area and path.
	Storage	Cookie stored in the type 0 client store.
	External Representation	HSP session credential. Encrypted and signed cookie (normally not leaving the SRM). Representation to the application server is environment specific and can either be the SES login ticket, a header containing the user id or any other individual mechanism used by AAI.
	Session Creation	Created after successful login.
	Cardinality	Multiple per type 0 client session. Usually one per security domain (and per Member/Customer). Can also be specified per location.
	Time-out	Inactivity- and final time-out causes redirect to a login service. Time-out is controlled by the following directive: AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout , AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod , and AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger .
Type 2 Application Session	Description	Application-Server specific session, allows to access applications session.
	Storage	Application-Server specific.
	External Representation	Usually a cookie which is held in the type 0 client session store, e.g. ASPSESSIONID cookie.
	Session Creation	Issued by an application server after a successful login or first access. Application server must check the credentials received from the SRM to examine the users identity (and also check the credentials lifetime if available).
	Cardinality	Multiple per client and client session, typically one per application.
	Time-out	Application server specific. Session lives typically longer than any other session (see section " Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) " about how to handle an expired type 2 session.

4.5 Session Store

A session store is used to store HTTP user sessions in a fashion so that the information can be shared among SRM processes or different SRM instances. There are two types of session store that can be used by SRM: the **L1 session store** and the one based on Apache Geode (**Geode Session Store**). The first one is a local in-memory store that allows super fast access to session data but has limitations when it comes to share a session between two instances. The latter is based on



the service of Apache Geode that allows to setup a multi-cluster (shared-nothing architecture) to maintain high distributed processing of session data with the cost of some extra delay of network communication.

In the context of session store the term of *Client Data (CD)* and *Client Data Store (CDS)* is often used. *Client Data* is basically a data element, that is used to record all session relevant data (like credentials) and other per-client information (like sensitive application server cookies). In this sense, *Client Data* is a generic term for a HTTP user session and so, *Client Data Store* is a synonym for session store.

4.5.1 Setting up an Apache Geode Session Store

There is a central directive named *SE_SessionStore* that allows to enable the preferred session store. As the L1 Session Store is used by default, this directive must be set to enable the Geode Session Store. Once enabled, at least the host name and port of the Geode locator to which to connect to is required. All other settings are optional.

```
SE_SessionStore geode

SE_GeodeSessionStoreLocator geode-locator-1.example.com:10023
SE_GeodeSessionStoreLocator geode-locator-2.example.com:10023
SE_GeodeSessionStoreRegion sessions
```

4.5.1.1 Enabling TLS encryption for cluster communication

The activation of TLS encryption first requires the *security properties file* of a Geode cluster to be adjusted. The following example is used to give a quick overview how the configuration could look like: in this example TLS encryption is enabled for all participating components and needed keystores are specified. The *ssl-keystore* setting must point to a JAVA keystore file that includes the private keys and public certificates used by components. The *ssl-truststore* keystore file must include all public certificates of trusted server entities and certificate authorities. Other settings are optional and can be chosen according to requirements.

```
ssl-enabled-components = all
ssl-keystore = /path/to/keystore.jks
ssl-keystore-password = password
ssl-keystore-type = jks
ssl-truststore = /path/to/truststore.jks
ssl-truststore-password = password
ssl-truststore-type = jks
ssl-protocols = TLSv1.2
ssl-ciphers = any
```

In order to pass security settings to Geode locator and server instances the *--security-properties-file* command option is used. For example using *gfsH*:

```
start locator \
  <other settings> \
  --security-properties-file=/path/to/security.properties
```

For further detailed information about TLS encryption in a cluster the official Apache Geode documentaiton should be referred.

On SRM side, TLS encryption is activated using *SE_GeodeSessionStoreKeystores*. The directive accepts a keystore file containing the private and public key pair to be used and a keystore file containing all trusted certificates (server, CA) of the Geode cluster.

```
SE_GeodeSessionStoreKeystores /path/to/keystore.pem \
                               /path/to/truststore.pem
```



4.5.1.2 Enabling cluster access authentication

SRM also allows to use access authentication backed by a secured Geode cluster. As the first step to use this security feature the *security properties file* requires the specification of a security manager that enforces access authentication.

```
security-manager = org.usp.geode.security.FileSecurityManager
security-json = security.json
```

The Apache Geode software project provides the well-defined *org.apache.geode.security.SecurityManager* interface that allows the implementation of customized security managers. A simple implementation of a security manager might be one that reads user credentials and roles from a file, whereas another implementation might be database driven.

In the HSP packages we deliver the *org.usp.geode.security.FileSecurityManager* in the *geode-usp.jar* library. This implementation expects users and roles in JSON format. In the configuration example above we use the *org.usp.geode.security.FileSecurityManager* to which we pass all authentication data using the JSON file named *security.json*.

Note

In order for a Geode locator and server to find the class of *org.apache.geode.security.SecurityManager*, the *geode-usp.jar* file must be included in the classpath on start-up. When using *gfsh's start* command the path to the JAR file can for example be passed following:

```
start locator [... other options ...] --classpath=/path/to/geode-usp.jar
and
start server [... other options ...] --classpath=/path/to/geode-usp.jar
```

security.json

```
{
  "roles": [
    {
      "name": "data",
      "operationsAllowed": [
        "DATA:MANAGE",
        "DATA:WRITE",
        "DATA:READ"
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "cluster",
      "operationsAllowed": [
        "CLUSTER:MANAGE",
        "CLUSTER:WRITE",
        "CLUSTER:READ"
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "role1",
      "operationsAllowed": [
        "DATA:WRITE",
        "DATA:READ"
      ],
      "regions": ["region1", "region3"]
    }
  ],
}
```



```
{
  "name": "role2",
  "operationsAllowed": [
    "DATA:WRITE",
    "DATA:READ"
  ],
  "regions": ["region2"]
},
"users": [
  {
    "name": "superuser",
    "password": "pass123",
    "roles": [
      "cluster",
      "data"
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "user1",
    "password": "pass456",
    "roles": [
      "role1"
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "user2",
    "password": "pass789",
    "roles": [
      "role2"
    ]
  }
]
```

To give an overview how user and roles can be defined the *security.json* file above contains the definition of three users (*superuser*, *user1*, and *user2*) and three roles. The user *superuser* gets all possible cluster operation rights (manage, read, write) as well as read and write privileges to all existing Geode regions. However, *user1* only gets read and write access to *region1*. The same privileges gets *user2* for region *region2*. That is, *user1* is not able to write to or read from *region2*, same as *user2* has no right for *region1*.

In SRM, access authentication is enabled by using *SE_GeodeSessionStoreCredentials*. According to the example, an instance that should use *region1* as session store region would have to have following settings in its *httpd.conf* configuration.

```
SE_GeodeSessionStoreRegion region1
SE_GeodeSessionStoreCredentials user1 pass456
```

4.5.1.3 Deletion of expired sessions

A session in SRM is usable as long as its final timeout has not been reached. When the final timeout has been exceeded a session can be safely removed from the Geode session store so that no unnecessary memory space remains occupied.

Apache Geode provides the so called *time-to-live (TTL) expiration mechanism* for this purpose. The mechanism can be enabled per region and it runs completely inside the service (without any interaction or involvement of SRM). Operators



enabling the TTL expiration only have to ensure that the TTL expiration is set higher than the final timeout set in SRM's configuration.

Note

Incorrect settings of the TTL expiration can be lead to the removal of not yet expired sessions. If no TTL expiration is set at all it must be guaranteed that on all nodes enough system memory is available in order to give Geode the possibility to hold the expected whole amount of sessions. In that regard it may also be referred to the *overflow protection mechanism* of Apache Geode.

In the following it is shown how the TTL expiration can be set for the example region *region1*. Note that using the mechanism also requires to enable statistics and to set the TTL expiration action to *DESTROY*.

```
create region --name=region1 \  
  --type=REPLICATE \  
  --enable-statistics=true \  
  --entry-time-to-live-expiration 28800 \  
  --entry-time-to-live-expiration-action DESTROY
```

Using *gfs*'s *create* command is only one way to enable the TTL expiration mechanism for a specific region. This can also be done in the region element of a *cache.xml* file, or through Geode's service API.

Please refer to the official Apache geode documentation for all details.

4.6 Events

4.6.1 Logging of HTTP Headers

The Apache *LogFormat* directive allows to log HTTP-Headers with each entry written to the access log (*access_log*).

The following sample directive appends the HSP-generated HTTP header "ClientCorrelator" and the response measurement time "HSP_TimeLoFi" to each log line written to the access log.

```
LogFormat "%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %>s %b \"%{ClientCorrelator}i\" \"%{HSP_TimeLoFi}o" ↵  
  \"
```

4.6.2 Environment Variables

Events that are stored in environment variables can be used with apaches *SetEnvIf* directive to trigger corresponding actions.

4.6.3 Application Event Headers

There are event headers send to application. You have to allow these events headers send to application with the directive "[HWG_RequestHeaders](#)".

```
HWG_RequestHeaders %SRM_event_std
```



4.6.4 Variable List

ClientCorrelator

Unique ID to identify a client (see "Type 0" in "Table 52: Session Types"). SRM only.

RequestCorrelator

Unique ID to identify a request. Available at HttpListener, HttpsListener and SRM.

LocationCorrelator

The Location or LocationMatch setting (as configured in the server configuration) a request is mapped to. This correlator is mainly intended to be used for statistic correlation.

HSP_TimeFoFi

Elapsed time between start sending data to the application server (first out) until the receiving the response data from the application server (first in). Time is shown in seconds and milliseconds. Available at SRM only.

HSP_TimeLoFi

Elapsed time between all data has been send to the application server (last out) until the receiving the response data from the application server (first in). Time is shown in seconds and milliseconds. Available at SRM only.

HSP_TimeFoLo

Elapsed time between start sending data to the application server (first out) until the complete request has been sent to the application server (last out). Time is shown in seconds and milliseconds. Available at SRM only.

HSP_TimeFiLi

Elapsed time between first byte received from the application server (first in) until the last byte has been received from the server (last in). Time is shown in seconds and milliseconds. Available at SRM only.

HSP_TimeLoLi

Elapsed time between all data has been send to the application server (last out) until the last byte has been received from the server (last in). Time is shown in seconds and milliseconds. Available at SRM only.

HSP_TimeTCP

Measured time needed for TCP connection establishment to backend application server.

HSP_TimeTLS

Measured time needed for TLS connection setup with backend application server.

HSP_TimeGeodeTotal

If the Geode session store is in use, this variable contains the measured time for the corresponding HTTP request needed for all operations on the Geode cluster.

ICAP_TimeReqmod

Measured time needed for REQMOD outcall to ICAP service.

ICAP_TimeRespmo

Measured time needed for RESPMOD outcall to ICAP service.

HSP_UE_unparsed_uri

Incoming request line when using URL encryption. Available at HttpListener and HttpsListener only.

HSP_HgwHost

Hostname of the back-end which has processed the request. Available at SRM only.

HSP_CL_AC

Access control events.

HSP_CL_RF

Request filter events.



HSP_CL_SE

Session events.

HSP_CL_GW

Gateway events.

HSP_SE_NUM

Number of sessions.

SERVERNAME

Server name or alias name of current request.

HSP_SE_ExtCookie_InitUrl

URL to initialize ExtCookie

HSP_SE_ExtCookie_InitLink

Link to initialize ExtCookie

HSP_SE_ExtSslSid_InitUrl

URL to initialize SslSid

HSP_SE_ExtSslSid_InitLink

Link to initialize SslSid

HSP_SE_ExtUrl_InitUrl

URL to initialize ExtUrl

HSP_SE_ExtUrl_InitLink

Link to initialize ExtUrl

HSP_SE_CdLimit_error

Is set to "CdTooBig" if cd size is bigger than specified

ICAP_REQ_Status

Status line returned by ICAP REQMOD request

ICAP_REQ_<header>

Header value returned by ICAP REQMOD request

ICAP_RES_Status

Status line returned by ICAP RESPMOD request

ICAP_RES_<header>

Header value returned by ICAP RESPMOD request

VAR_AC_<name>

AC attributes of the user session which has been set at user authentication, e.g. VAR_AC_FormUsername.

4.6.5 Event and Variable Matrix

Name	Event Request/Response	Log	To Application
ClientCorrelator	no	yes	yes
RequestCorrelator	no	yes	yes
ConnectionCorrelator	no	yes	yes
HSP_TimeFoFi	no	yes	no
HSP_TimeLoFi	no	yes	no
HSP_TimeFoLo	no	yes	no



Name	Event Request/Response	Log	To Application
HSP_TimeFiLi	no	yes	no
HSP_TimeLoLi	no	yes	no
HSP_TimeTCP	no	yes	no
HSP_TimeTLS	no	yes	no
HSP_UE_unparsed_uri	no	yes	no
HSP_HgwHost	no/yes	yes	no
HSP_CL_AC	yes/yes	yes	yes
HSP_CL_RF	yes/yes	yes	yes
HSP_CL_SE	yes/yes	yes	yes
HSP_CL_GW	yes/yes	yes	yes
HSP_SE_NUM	no/yes	yes	no
SERVERNAME	yes/yes	yes	no
HSP_SE_ExtCookie_InitUrl	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_ExtCookie_InitLink	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_ExtSslSid_InitUrl	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_ExtSslSid_InitLink	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_ExtUrl_InitUrl	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_ExtUrl_InitLink	yes/yes	no	no
HSP_SE_CdLimit_error	no/yes	no	no
ICAP_REQ_Status	yes/no	no	no
ICAP_REQ_<header>	yes/no	no	no
ICAP_RES_Status	no/yes	no	no
ICAP_RES_<header>	no/yes	no	no
VAR_AC_<name>	yes/yes	no	no

4.6.6 Single events of HSP_CL_AC, HSP_CL_RF, HSP_CL_SE, and HSP_CL_GW

The following tables describe all possible events of Access Control Events (HSP_CL_AC), Request Filter Events (HSP_CL_RF), Gateway Events (HSP_CL_GW) and Session Events (HSP_CL_SE).

4.6.6.1 Access Control Events (HSP_CL_AC)

Shows that an event in the access and authentication enforcement module has occurred.

Table 52: Access control events

Event Id	Short event description
AC(10):login_member	Successful login of a user at login level "member".
AC(11):login_customer	Successful login of a user at login level "customer".
AC(12):invalidate	User credentials have been invalidated (logout).
AC(13):invalid	Access to a protected area with none or an invalid credential. User has to login first.
AC(14):insufficient	User has an insufficient credential.
AC(15):startpage	Access to the login page of the Authentication Service.
AC(16):az	User has an insufficient authorization.
AC(17):az soap	Server received a soap message which is not allowed for this user (insufficient authorization).
AC(18):pds	Successful request replay from post data store.
AC(19):filter	Request has been denied due to an AC start page filter.



4.6.6.2 Request Filter Events (HSP_CL_RF)

These are request and response filtering events which indicate a filter policy violation: a possible attack against the Web application which has successfully been defeated.

Table 53: Request filter events

Event Id	Short event description
RF(30):RQ_violation	Request validation has failed.
RF(31):RS_violation	Response validation has failed.
RF(32):UE_violation	URL decoding has failed. See the encryption settings.
RF(33):FV_violation	Form validation has failed. See the dynamic request white list filter settings.
RF(34):CE_violation	Cookie decoding has failed.
RF(35):SF_violation	Soap message validation has failed.
RF(36):VR_violation	Parameter validation has failed.
RF(37):QS_violation	QoS rule violation has occurred. This includes the static request white list filter and custom request blacklist filter too.
RF(100):anomaly	general anomaly detected
RF(101):protocol	protocol violation detected
RF(102):policy	policy violation detected
RF(103):automat	automation attack detected
RF(104):generic	generic attack detected
RF(105):sqli	SQL injection attack detected
RF(106):xss	cross-site scripting attack detected
RF(107):backdoor	backdoor attack detected
RF(108):lfi	local file inclusion (LFI) attack detected
RF(109):rfi	remote file inclusion (RFI) attacks detected
RF(110):rce	remote code execution (RCE) attacks detected
RF(111):php	PHP code execution attack detected
RF(112):fixation	session fixation attack detected
RF(113):sql_data_leakage	SQL data leakages attack detected
RF(114):java_data_leakage	Java data leakages attack detected
RF(115):php_data_leakage	PHP data leakages attack detected
RF(116):iis_data_leakage	IIS data leakages attack detected
RF(150):outbound	outbound anomaly check failed
RF(180):csrf	Cross-site request forgery check failed
RF(181):dos	Request was blocked due denial of service prevention
RF(182):client_restriction	Client request rate limit violated
RF(183):geoip_block	Client request originates from blocked GeoIP location
RF(184):anon_block	Client request originates from blocked anonymization service

4.6.6.3 Session Events (HSP_CL_SE)

These are events caused by the session controller.

Table 54: Session events

Event Id	Short event description
SE(50):new	A new client data session has been opened.
SE(51):invalidate_all	The client data session has been invalidated.



Table 54: (continued)

Event Id	Short event description
SE(52):invalidate	The application data has been invalidated.
SE(53):LK_violation	A session lock violation has occurred.
SE(54):dos	A denial of service prevention action has been taken.
SE(55):transfer	A session has been transferred.
SE(56):implicit_reauth	A request was blocked due to request serialization and automatically reauthenticated after the user successfully authenticated himself.

4.6.6.4 Gateway Events (HSP_CL_GW)

Gateway events concerns the communication with either the client or server.

Table 55: Gateway events

Event Id	Short event description
GW(70):conn_failure	Connection to target server has failed.
GW(71):bad_as_proto	HTTP protocol violation by the target server.
GW(72):failed_as_rw	Send or receive of request or response data to or from the target server has failed.
GW(73):failed_cl_rw	Send or receive of request or response data to or from the client has failed.
GW(74):failover	Switch to another target server.
GW(75):error_map	An error code response of a target server has been handled locally, e.g. remap of error code.
GW(76):app_code_<code>	For each application response code a separate event. Examples: GW(76):app_code_200 or GW(76):app_code_302

4.6.7 mod_security event logging

mod_security blockings can be logged as Request Filter events (HSP_CL_RF). In order to enable this events mod_security rules have to be assigned to given attack classes by use of the directive "HGW_RulesClassification".

```
HGW_RulesClassification "<Attack_Class>" "<Rule_Id> | <Rule_Id_Range> | ..."
```

Single rules or a range of rules can be assigned by its rule identification (ID) to an attack class. Note that rule identifications must be numeric. The available attack classes are:

- Detection of general anomalies, stated as GENERAL_ANOMALY_CLASS
- Detection of violations of the HTTP protocol, stated as PROTOCOL_VIOLATION_CLASS
- Detection of violations of locally defined usage policy, stated as POLICY_VIOLATION_CLASS
- Detection of bots, crawlers, scanners and other surface malicious activity, stated as AUTOMATION_ATTACK_CLASS.
- Detection of common web application security attacks, stated as GENERIC_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of SQL injections, stated as SQL_INJECTION_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of Cross-Site-Scripting attacks, stated as XSS_ATTACK_CLASS



- Detection of backdoor attacks, stated as BACKDOOR_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of outbound data leakage, stated as OUTBOUND_VIOLATION
- Detection of local file inclusion (LFI) attacks, stated as LFI_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of remote file inclusion (RFI) attacks, stated as RFI_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of remote code execution (RCE) attacks, stated as RCE_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of PHP code execution attacks, stated as PHP_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of session fixation attacks, stated as SESSION_FIXATION_ATTACK_CLASS
- Detection of SQL data leakages attacks, stated as SQL_DATA_LEAKAGES_CLASS
- Detection of Java data leakages attacks, stated as JAVA_DATA_LEAKAGES_CLASS
- Detection of PHP data leakages attacks, stated as PHP_DATA_LEAKAGES_CLASS
- Detection of IIS data leakages attacks, stated as IIS_DATA_LEAKAGES_CLASS

For example, following configuration assigns the rule with ID "12003" to the attack class of SQL Injections whereas all rules in the range starting from ID "10000" to ID "10030" are assigned to the class of XSS attacks.

```
HGW_RulesClassification "SQL_INJECTION_ATTACK_CLASS" "12003"  
HGW_RulesClassification "XSS_ATTACK_CLASS" "10000-10030"
```

4.7 Logging of Request Statistic Data

The *logstat* utility can be used to collect request statistics for each virtual host. It can be used in conjunction with the *TransferLog* and *CustomLog* directive. Uses these directives followed by the pipe character and the *logstat* command (full qualified path) in order to write the statistics to an extra file. Refer to the usage text of the *logstat* utility about the command options. Use the *HSP_StatFile* directive to display a graph generated from this statistic data within the HSP info portal status page.

4.8 Logging of Session Statistic Data

Per session/per client statistic data can be generated using the *SE_LogNewCd* directive. This data is written to the error log of the SRM (one entry for every client session).

4.9 Logging SSL information of frontend connections

Logging of frontend SSL information can be done in HTS by using various environment variables. Please have a look at the *mod_ssl* documentation for detailed information and a list of available variables. Besides the logging possibilities provided by *mod_ssl*, HTS sets the following additional environment variables:

- *HSP_JA3_CLIENT_STRING*, providing the JA3 string of the client
- *HSP_JA3_CLIENT_FINGERPRINT*, providing the JA3 fingerprint of the client

These environment variables can be logged by syntax of *%{ENV_VAR}e* in the format argument of the directives *LogFormat* and *CustomLog*. For example,

```
CustomLog "logs/ja3log" "ja3=%{HSP_JA3_CLIENT_FINGERPRINT}e ja3_str=%{ ←  
HSP_JA3_CLIENT_STRING}e"
```



4.10 Logging SSL information of backend connections

SSL information of backend connections can be logged in SRM using the "eXtension format function" of *mod_log_config*. Currently, there are two functions available:

- *HGW_SSL_CLIENT_CERT_FINGERPRINT*, providing the sha256 fingerprint of the client certificate in use
- *HGW_SSL_SERVER_CERT_FINGERPRINT*, providing the sha256 fingerprint of the certificate that the server presented

The functions can be set by syntax of *%{FUNCTION}x* in the format argument of *LogFormat* and *CustomLog* directives. For example,

```
CustomLog "logs/fingerprints" "client_cert=%{HGW_SSL_CLIENT_CERT_FINGERPRINT}x ↔  
server_cert=%{HGW_SSL_SERVER_CERT_FINGERPRINT}x"
```

In addition, the length of fingerprints can be shortened by adding *:<number-of-bytes>* to the corresponding function. In the following example only the first 10 bytes of fingerprints are logged:

```
CustomLog "logs/fingerprints" "client_cert=%{HGW_SSL_CLIENT_CERT_FINGERPRINT:10} ↔  
x server_cert=%{HGW_SSL_SERVER_CERT_FINGERPRINT:10}x"
```

4.11 Logging TLS keys of backend connections

SRM allows TLS decryption of backend connections by logging the session keys to a designated file, which can then be used with network analysis tools like Wireshark to inspect recorded traffic. The feature is enabled by combining *HGW_TLSAllowKeyLogging* in the global or virtual host configuration. In addition, the environment variable *SSLKEYLOGFILE* must be set to specify to which file the TLS keys will be logged. The environment variable can be set conditionally in order to log keys for specific request only, for example by the usage of *SetEnvIf*.

```
<VirtualHost *:12345>  
  ServerName YourVirtualHost  
  
  # ... other virtual host settings ...  
  
  HGW_TLSAllowKeyLogging on  
  
  <Location /yourlocation>  
    SetEnvIf User-Agent "YourUserAgent" SSLKEYLOGFILE=/path/to/keylog.out  
  </Location>  
  
  # ... other virtual host settings ...  
</VirtualHost>
```

Note: Please note that TLS key logging should only be used for debugging purposes in non-production environments.

4.12 Monitoring Log Events

Log data events (access and error log) may be monitored using the *logmon* utility. This tool can be used to execute external commands based on log message patterns. You should not use the User-Agent header data or any other string which can be manipulated by the client within the log data processed by the monitoring tool. Refer to the usage text of the *logmon* utility about the possible options.



4.13 Logfile Rotation

logrotate is a simple program for use in conjunction with piped logfiles. It rotates the target file at a defined time and optionally compress the rotated file. Refer to the usage text of the *logrotate* utility about the possible options.

Example for daily rotation:

```
TransferLog "| /opt/usp/hsp/srm/bin/logrotate -o /var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/ ↵  
access_log -s 86400 -z"
```

Note: each *logrotate* instance must use an individual output file.

4.14 loghandler

The *loghandler* utility can be used to read log messages from standard input and distribute them asynchronously to several log handlers. By this means, the utility can be attached to the `error_log` or `access_log` of the HSP and take over several tasks.

All handlers are configured by the use of a common configuration file. For each handler several instances can be defined. Please refer to the help text of the *loghandler* utility in order to get a full list of available command line options.

```
ErrorLog "|/opt/usp/hsp/srm/bin/loghandler -c /opt/usp/hsp/srm/conf/loghandler. ↵  
conf --trace-output /opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/loghandler_trace"
```

4.14.1 Available log handlers

In the following all currently available log handlers are listed:

4.14.1.1 log_writer

The *log_writer* is a simple handler that writes received log messages one-to-one to a defined output file. If the path of the output file begins with the pipe character "|" then it is assumed to be a command to spawn to handle the log messages.

The following snippet shows an example configuration of the *log_writer*.

```
log_writer:  
{  
  lw1:  
  {  
    output = "/var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/error_log";  
  
    //  
    // optionally, we could redirect the output to logrotate in order to ↵  
    // activate log rotation  
    //  
    //output = "|/opt/usp/hsp/srm/bin/logrotate -o /var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/ ↵  
    // error_log -s 86400 -z";  
  };  
}
```

Please note, that a *log_writer* instance should always be configured if the *loghandler* utility is attached to the `error_log` of the HSP. Otherwise, the HSP does not log any error log messages.



4.14.1.2 regex_event_monitor

The *regex_event_monitor* monitors log messages by matching them against a regular expression. If an expression matches the handler is able to react with the execution of a system command.

The definition of an observation interval and a violation limit allows to control the frequency of command executions. In following, the list of all possible settings is shown:

Table 56: Available settings for the *regex_event_monitor*

Setting	Description
output = <VALUE>	This settings defines the file where messages are written to. This setting can be done globally for all instances or for each instance separately. If the file-path begins with the pipe character " " then it is assumed to be a command to spawn to handle the log messages.
regex = <VALUE>	Defines the regular expression that should be applied.
message = <VALUE>	Defines the message that is written to the output if the expression matches. The substrings (from \$0 to \$10) from the expression can be used within the string.
interval = <VALUE>	Sets the interval in seconds used for evaluation of matches.
limit = <VALUE>	Sets the violation limit.
identifier = <VALUE>	The identifier string allows the holding of multiple counters. Each matching log message is assigned to a counter by its identifier whereby matching substrings (from \$1 to \$10) define the identifier to be used. If the identifier is a static string then only one counter is used.
action = <VALUE>	Defines the command to be executed on violation of the limit. The environment variables TIME, MESSAGE and IDENTIFIER are exported before the execution of the command. TIME holds the time when the limit exceeded, MESSAGE holds the composed message string, and IDENTIFIER the ID of the counter.

```
regex_event_monitor:
{
  output = "/var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/rem_log";

  rem1:
  {
    output = "/var/opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/rem1_log";
    regex = "^.*[error] (HSP[0-9]{1,4}) (.*)";
    message = "HSP error $1 ($2) occurred 100 times within last hour!";
    interval = 3600;
    limit = 100;
    identifier = $1;
    action = "/opt/bin/sendmail.sh $MESSAGE admin@your.domain.ch";
  };
}
```



4.15 Customizing Error Pages

4.15.1 Locations, Addressing Deployment

All error pages, the referenced images and referenced static HTML pages must be deployed in the specified directories. Additionally, the SRM uses a set of html pages and gif files to manage its Sessions Store.

Table 57: Default directories for Error- and Session-Pages

Component	Directories
SRM	srm/htdocs/srm-error-pages srm/htdocs/cookie-check srm/htdocs/esr-sslsid-init
HttpListener	htl/htdocs/htx-error-pages
HttpsListener	hts/htdocs/htx-error-pages

Do not deploy error pages outside of the specified directories.

4.15.2 Replacing installed Error Pages

Files in the htdocs.tpl directory can be used as examples building your own error pages.

4.15.3 Dynamic Error Pages (SHTML pages)

4.15.3.1 Overview

To display dynamic content in error pages, the SRM supports HTML pages containing Apache Server Side Include (SSI) statements. The SSI statements are embedded as SGML comments. This extended HTML pages are called SHTML pages.

4.15.3.2 Enabling SSI

The evaluation of SSI statements in SHTML pages has to be enabled in the SRM using the following Apache directives shown for the sample location **ssi-test**.

```
<Location /ssi-test>  
  Options IncludesNOEXEC  
  AddType text/html .shtml  
  AddHandler server-parsed .shtml  
</Location>
```

For security reasons, the SRM does not support the SSI #exec statement. Requests to locations where "Options Includes" has been specified are aborted and a log message is written.

4.15.3.3 Frames

Using the sample directives shown above, the files must use the suffix ".shtml". Frames are not supported.

4.15.3.4 Additional Documentation

See [\[APACHE\]](#) for details on SSI.



4.15.4 Setting up the "Cookie-Check Error" Page

4.15.4.1 Overview

If the client does not accept the SCDID cookie used by the SRM's Session Store, an error page is shown. See the following file for typical contents of this page:

```
[HSP_TEMPL], SRM/htdocs/cookie-check/CookieCheckError.shtml
```

4.15.4.2 Customizing Possibilities

If using an SHTML page, the following links can be provided:

- A link to a destination where the cookie check is retried and the user is taken to the original location.
- A link to a destination where the client receives a Session ID using URL Rewriting, then the user will be taken to the original location. (URL Rewriting must be enabled)

The following template contains more documentation for customizing this error page using SHTML:

```
[HSP_TEMPL], SRM/htdocs/cookie-check/CookieCheckError.shtml
```

4.15.4.3 Deployment

The cookie-check error pages must be deployed in the SRM's cookie-check directory. See table "[Default directories for Error- and Session-Pages](#)" above.

4.15.4.4 Configuration Steps

1. Configure Cookie-Check error page, see "[SRM - Session Control Directives](#)".
2. If using SHTML, SSI Support for the /cookie-check location must be enabled, see "[Dynamic Error Pages \(SHTML pages\)](#)".

4.15.5 Setting up the "Insufficient Session Security Error" Page

4.15.5.1 Overview

If the client tries to access a location, which does not permit the Session Security currently used, the SRM will return a "409 Conflict" HTTP error.

4.15.5.2 Customizing Possibilities

If using an SHTML page, the following dynamic generated links can be provided:

- A link to a destination where a cookie check will be retried and then the user will be taken back to the application.

The following template contains more documentation about customizing this error page using SHTML:

```
[HSP_TEMPL], SRM/htdocs/srm-error-pages/InsufficientSessionSecurityError.shtml
```



4.15.5.3 Deployment

The error pages and all referenced images and static HTML pages must be deployed in SRM's htdocs/srm-error-pages directory. (The "htdocs/srm-error-pages" directory is accessed without creating a session which prevents loops)

4.15.5.4 Configuration Steps

1. The error page must be specified by the Apache "ErrorDocument" directive (error code 409). See [\[APACHE\]](#).
2. If using SHTML, SSI Support for the /cookie-check location must be enabled, see "[Dynamic Error Pages \(SHTML pages\)](#)".

4.16 L1 Client Data Store Settings

In case the L1 Client Data Store is in use make sure the size of the store is big enough to keep all per-client data. This includes:

- POST data stored on inactivity time-outs.
- Application's session credentials. (Cookies set by applications)
- SSL Out Sessions (if using the SSL Out feature of the HTTP 1.1 Gateway).
- SSL session ID lock rule event counters and history.

The memory size must be specified by the [SE_L1Cds_SMFileAndSize](#) directive.

Care have been taken to limit the impact of denial of service (DOS) attacks (see "[Client Data Lifetime Settings](#)"). If the L1 Client Data store runs out of space, stored POST data is already dropped on inactivity time-out and the creation of new sessions is delayed. If such actions are taken, messages are written to the SRM's error log. The [SE_SessionStore_TimeOutRequestCounter](#), [SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut](#), and [SE_L1Cds_AnonymousMinFreeMem](#) directives may be used to control DOS attack prevention.

4.16.1 Client Data Lifetime Settings

The time out settings specified by the [SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut](#), [SE_SessionStore_AnonymousInactiveTimeOut](#), and [SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut](#) directives define the maximum allowed lifetime of the data stored in the session store for each client. An expiration of the client data equals the user closing its web-browser and terminating all sessions the client had opened.

4.16.2 Client Credential Timeout Settings

There are four timers controlling the credential lifetime, i.e. [SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut](#), [SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut](#), [AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout](#) and [AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod](#).

Let's assume that we have the following values defined:

SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut	28800	# 8 hours
SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut	1200	# 20 min
AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout	7200	# 2 hours
AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod	900	# 15 min

After 15 minutes of client inactivity, the user must re-authenticate. All session data is retained. If the user has not re-authenticated within the 15 minutes, i.e. [AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod](#) has expired and [SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut](#) has been reached, all session data is lost and the user must re-authenticate. If the client is active for 2 hours and [AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout](#) is reached, the credential has expired and the user must request a new one, i.e. authenticate again. All session data is retained. After 8 hours, i.e. [SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut](#) is reached, the session will be discarded and all session data will be lost.



4.16.3 Location-specific Timeout Settings

If `AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod` is set specifically to different locations, the maximum inactivity time between two consecutive requests is used to determine if a client still has access to a location. If the maximum inactivity period has exceeded the period set for a location, access is no longer granted. However, other locations may still be accessible.

4.17 Configuring `mod_security`

4.17.1 Overview

Protects against various injection attacks.

The `mod_security` intrusion detection and prevention engine is used to increase security of web applications against various known and unknown attacks using manipulated requests. Working as an Apache Web server module, it filters headers and payload of incoming requests for command and SQL injection, cross site scripting (XSS) attempts, cookie poisoning, format string attacks and hidden field manipulation.

See [\[MOD_SECURITY\]](#) for configuration details.

4.17.2 Performance Considerations

The additional request checks cause an estimated (maximal) performance loss of about 10%. However, in practice, this penalty can be decreased by forcing `mod_security` not to check requests for static content such as images, style-sheets and JavaScript libraries, although this is not recommended for security reasons.

Note: To keep performance loss in a productive system at an absolute minimum, never run `mod_security` in debug mode and also make sure not to enable extensive logging.

4.17.3 Recommended Configuration

A configuration file with recommended filter rules is part of the configuration package.

4.17.4 Note on custom session cookie names (SCDID)

If you use custom session cookie names ([SE_ExtCookie_NameSuffix](#)), depending on your ModSecurity configuration, those custom session cookies might get blocked by the ModSecurity rules. In such a case, you will have to add custom exceptions to make sure your cookies will not be blocked.

4.18 Configuring `mod_header_modify`

This is a small Apache Open Source module that will modify, add or remove incoming http headers.

Note: If setting new headers, they will not be sent to application servers unless they are specified by directive [HGW_RequestHeaders](#).

See [\[MOD_HEADER_MODIFY\]](#) for configuration details.

4.19 External Session Representations (ESR)

4.19.1 Overview

The HSP supports four different External Session Representations (ESRs): Cookie, URL Rewriting, SSL Session ID and Bearer authentication scheme. The additional features "Session ID Lock" allows to increase security for Cookie and URL Rewriting. See also the table below.



Table 58: ESR Overview

Aspect	ESR "SSL Session ID"	ESR "Cookie"	ESR "Cookie" with SSL Session ID Lock	ESR "URL"	ESR "URL" with Session ID Lock	ESR ↔ "Bearer"
Session Security	+\\++	\\++	+\\++	+	\\++	\\+\\++ ↔
Applications must use relative URLs	no	no	no	yes	yes	no
Cookies Required	no	yes	yes	no	no	no
Browser Restrictions	yes	no	yes	no	yes	no

4.19.2 ESR Cookie

4.19.2.1 Configuration Checklist

Configuration steps

1. HttpsListener: Forward location `/cookie-check` to SRM.
2. SRM: Enable Cookie based sessions using the directive `SE_Ext_Enable`. (Default)
3. Customize the cookie-check error page

See [\[HSP_TEMPL\]](#) for configuration examples.

4.19.3 ESR URL

4.19.3.1 URL Rewriting - Checklist

Configuration steps

1. HttpsListener: Forward location `/esr-url-init` to SRM.
2. HttpsListener: If not using HTTP 1.1 Gateway's alias `"%HSP_std"`, configure HTTP header `"EsrUrlScdid"` to be forwarded to SRM.
3. SRM: Enable URL Rewriting using the directive `SE_Ext_Enable`.
4. Specify per Location if URL Rewriting is allowed using directive `SE_Ext_Allow`.
5. Specify an Error page for 409 Conflict

See [\[HSP_TEMPL\]](#) for configuration examples.

4.19.4 ESR SSL Session ID

4.19.4.1 Introduction

This feature allows to use the SSL Session ID (SslSid) as the External Session Representation (ESR). This ESR offers a highly secure, cookie-less session security.

Compared with ESR Cookie, this ESR allows same security without cookies, but does not allow the use of external viewers, which download files directly, such as the Microsoft Media Player. Not every browser does support this feature (see also ["SSL Session ID Requirements"](#)).



4.19.4.2 Configuration Checklist

Configuration steps

1. **HttpsListener:** Use directive the following directives to enable generating and forwarding of SSL headers required by the SRM:

```
HGW_RequestHeaders %HTTP11_std %HSP_std  
HGW_SSLHeaders %HGW_all
```
2. **Disable the TLS Client Ticket extension (RFC 5077)**

```
SSLSessionTickets off
```
3. **HttpsListener:** Adjust the `SSLSessionCacheTimeout` directive to a sufficient session time.
4. **SRM:** Enable ESR SSL Session ID using the directive [SE_Ext_Enable](#). Allow ESR SSL Session ID using the `SE_Ext_Allow` directive.
5. **SRM:** Specify the supported browsers using the [SE_ExtSslSid_Supported](#) directive. This page is shown to the client when its browser does not support SslSid.
6. Create the necessary error page `/esr-sslsid-init/SslSidErros.shtml` or specify the used error page by the [SE_ExtSslSid_ErrorPage](#) directive. This page is shown to the client when its browser does not support SslSid.
7. **SRM:** Enable SSI for the location `/esr-sslsid-init` when using dynamic shtml files.

See [\[HSP_TEMPL\]](#) for configuration examples.

4.19.5 Session ID Lock

4.19.5.1 Overview

The SSL Session ID Lock features increases session security of ESR "Cookie" and ESR "URL".. This feature is not supported by all browser versions. See "[SSL Session ID Requirements](#)" for further information. This feature can be configured to be only activated for the supported browser versions.

If the browser starts an external viewer (e.g. Media Player), this viewer does not use the same SSL Session ID as the Web Browser. Such content can be excluded from the SSL Session ID Lock.

4.19.5.2 Configuration

The SSL Session ID Lock can be enabled using the following methods:

- Configuration directive "[SE_SSLSidLock](#)"(Per-virtual server)
- Disable the TLS Client Ticket extension (RFC 5077)

```
SSLSessionTickets off
```
- Browser match rule using the Apache "BrowserMatch" directive
- HTTP Header from login service, set on successful authorization

Note

Session ID Lock does not yet work in combination with the TLSv1.3 protocol.



To demonstrate how these methods are used to customize the configuration, the detailed processing sequence is shown below. For each request, an evaluation is done which determines whether the client's SSL connection must have the same SSL session ID (lock=on) or not (lock=off). In case of a discrepancy, the session is deleted and an error page is shown.

1. Start with default, set lock="off"
2. If [SE_SSLSidLock](#) exists in HSP configuration file, set lock to configured value ("on", "off" or "Is-controlled").
3. If a BrowserMatch directive matches the client's user agent, override lock with its value ("on", or "Is-controlled"). The BrowserMatch directive cannot be used to lower security ¹. Security order from low to high: "off", "Is-controlled", "on".
4. If lock is set to "Is-controlled", set lock from HTTP header received from LS ("on", "off" or "Is-controlled").
5. If the SSL Session ID differs from last request, the current session is deleted and an error page is displayed.

4.19.5.3 Excluding URLs from the SSL Session Id Lock

If external viewers are used, which download content instead of the Web-Browser (e.g. Windows Media Player), the SSL Session Id Lock does not work.

Such content must be excluded from the lock, which can be done by using the Configuration directive ["SE_SSLSidLockExcludeRegEx"](#). See ["SRM - Session Control Directives"](#) for details.

Such excluded content is no longer protected by the Session ID Lock.

4.19.5.4 Error Page

The error page is sent with HTTP status 403 (forbidden). This error page can be configured using the directive ["SE_SSLSidLockErrorPage"](#). See ["SRM - Session Control Directives"](#) for details.

4.19.5.5 Log Messages

In case of configuration errors, log messages will appear.

4.19.6 Advanced Session ID Lock Rules

The advanced Session ID lock rules allow a more flexible and fine-granular configuration of the Session ID lock behavior.

4.19.6.1 Events

Lock rule events are user defined session 'state change' conditions, which are traced within each request of a client session. If such a condition evaluates to "true", the specific event counter for this session is incremented, thus marking this session as (potentially) corrupted.

4.19.6.2 Lock Rules

Lock rules work on a per-directory context and evaluate event counters, to determine whether the session might be corrupted. In case of a potential corruption (lock rule expression evaluates to "true"), the Session ID lock action (BIDCHECK ², REAUTH, BLOCK, DROP, LOG, ACCEPT) is enforced.

¹ If lowering the security would be possible, an attacker could send a User-Agent header, which turns off the lock.

² See section ["Browser Id"](#) for usage of BIDCHECK action attribute



4.19.6.3 Events vs. Lock Rules

Events are traced over the whole client session. Therefore, they are able to detect attacks to client sessions, even if they occur in a public/unprotected location. However, events cannot take any actions (non-reactive).

The lock rules, in contrast, are the reactive counterpart to the events. They are used to protect sensitive locations (i. e. the locations they are defined in) from access by (potentially) corrupted sessions.

4.19.6.4 Expression Language

The Session ID lock rule event and lock rule definitions use a common expression language to specify conditions. This language is defined by the following BNF grammar:

```
expr      ::= "true" | "false"
           | "!" expr
           | expr "&&" expr
           | expr "||" expr
           | "(" expr ")"
           | comp

comp      ::= word "==" word | word "eq" word
           | word "!=" word | word "ne" word
           | word "<" word | word "lt" word
           | word "<=" word | word "le" word
           | word ">" word | word "gt" word
           | word ">=" word | word "ge" word
           | word "in" "{" wordlist "}"
           | word "=~" regex
           | word "!~" regex

wordlist  ::= word
           | wordlist "," word

word      ::= digit
           | cstring
           | variable
           | function

digit     ::= [0-9]+

cstring   ::= "... "

variable  ::= "%{" varname "}"

function  ::= funcname "(" funcargs ")"

funcargs  ::= cstring | variable
```

while for varname any variable from table ["Session ID lock rule variables"](#) can be used. Finally for funcname the following functions are available:

inIpHistory(*IP*)

Returns "1" if the *IP* is contained within the IP history of this session, "0" otherwise.



inWhitelist(IP)

Returns "1", if there is an whitelist group which contains the LOGIN_IP of the actual session and the CURRENT_IP of the actual request, "0" otherwise. This function is only usable in "SE_LockRule".

These functions take a string or variable argument which is expected to expand to an IP (i.e. CURRENT_IP, LAST_IP, etc.).

Notice that expression is first parsed into an internal machine representation and then evaluated in a second step. Actually, in per-server class context expression (i.e. "SE_LockDefineEvent") is parsed at startup time and at runtime only the machine representation is executed. For per-directory context (i.e. "SE_LockRule") this is different: here expression has to be parsed and immediately executed for every request.

Table 59: Session ID lock rule variables

Variable Name	Comment
CURRENT_IP	Resolves to the client IP used for the actual request in this session.
LAST_IP	Represents the client IP used for the last request in this session.
LOGIN_IP	Resolves to the client IP used for the login in this session.
CURRENT_SSID	Resolves to the SSL session ID for the actual request.
LAST_SSID	Represents the SSL session ID used for the last request in this session.
REAUTH_COUNT	Resolves the number of initiated re-authentications.
BIDCHK_COUNT	Resolves the number of successful browser id checks.
BIDCHK_IP	Resolves to the client IP used within the last browser id check.
<EventName>	Resolves to the number of occurrences of event wit name <i>EventName</i> in this session.

Example:

```
# <VirtualServer> part
# Define an event if SSL session ID and IP changes in the same request
SE_LockDefineEvent IpSsidChange : ( %{CURRENT_IP} != %{LOGIN_IP} ) && \
    ( %{CURRENT_SSID} != %{LAST_SSID} )

# <Location> part
# Define two white list groups
SE_LockWhiteList AOL : 64.12.128.0/24,64.12.130.0/24
SE_LockWhiteList Bluewin : 195.186.3.0/24,195.186.6.0/24

# Block request, if both IP and SSL session ID have changed since last request,
# except if actual IP is in white list
SE_LockRule BLOCK ( %{IpSsidChange} > 0 ) && ( inWhitelist( %{CURRENT_IP} ) == 0 ←
    )
```

4.19.6.5 Browser Id

During the user's login process, the SES tries to store (MSIE) respectively retrieves a unique identifier from the client. This identifier, called "browser id", is used as an additional attribute in the definition of the lock rules. In case of a lock rule violation, access will be denied depending on the configuration settings. JavaScript must be supported by the browser in order to store or generate a browser id. The JavaScript setting the browser id is embedded to the login server page. Validation of the browser id is implemented by html page sourcing the same JavaScript as used in the login page.

Configuration of the browser id check requires the following components:



1. JavaScript containing the code for browser id creation. This script is stored on the SRM in a location which is served by the handler "sil-bid-check-handler". In this example, the script is named "ses.js" and stored in the directory "htdocs/sil-bid-check".

```
<Location /sil-bid-check>
  SetHandler      sil-bid-check-handler
  AC_AccessArea  Public
</Location>
```

1. The login page sources and executes the java script in order to add the browser id to the form action.

```
<html><head>
...
<style type=text/css>.userData { BEHAVIOR: url(#default#userdata) } </style>
<script language="JavaScript" src="/sil-bid-check/ses.js" type="text/ ↵
  javascript">
</script>
</head>
<body>
...
<form name="LoginForm" method="post" action="AutoLogin">
...
</form>
...
<span class=userData id=sesUserData name="sesUserData"></span>
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
sesStart ("LoginForm");
//-->
</script>
</body></html>
```

1. The page to check the browser id in the case a lock rule violation occurs, is defined by the directive [SE_LockBidCheckFile](#).

```
<Location />
SE_LockBidCheckFile /opt/usp/hsp/srm/htdocs/sil-bid-check/check.html
</Location>
```

1. Browser id verification is activated as an attribute for the rule action.

```
SE_LockRule BIDCHECK,BLOCK (%{IpSsidChange} > 0) && (%{BIDCHK_COUNT} == 0) ↵
...
```

4.19.7 SSL Session ID Requirements

4.19.7.1 Server Configuration

The SSL Session ID is a unique session identifier assigned by the HttpsListener to each SSL session. The SSL Session ID is used to address the associated data in the SSL cache.



The `HttpsListener` renews the SSL Session ID based on the value defined by the `SSLSessionCacheTimeout` directive. Ensure to have sufficient value set for this timeout.

The following headers are required to be generated by the `HttpsListener` and forwarded to the SRM: "SSLSessionID", "SSLSessionTimeLeft", "SSLSessionAge".

Sample directives for `HttpsListener`:

```
HGW_SSLHeaders %HGW_all
HGW_RequestHeaders %HSP_ssl %HTTP11_std %HSP_std
```

Note that the use of the advanced SSL session ID lock rule mechanism (see section "[Advanced Session ID Lock Rules](#)") increases the usage of the shared memory defined by directive [\[SE_L1Cds_SMFileAndSize\]](#) (see also section "[Client Data Store Settings](#)").

TLS provides an extension (RFC5077) for caching SSL sessions on clients. If a client uses this extension then there will not be a SSL Session ID. To use the SSL Session Id it is necessary to disable this extension.

```
SSLSessionTicket off
```

The Secure Request Manger Gateway does not support the required SSL Session ID handling features and should not be used.

4.19.8 ESR Bearer

4.19.8.1 Introduction

This feature allows to use the Bearer authentication scheme as External Session Representation (ESR). The ESR Bearer offers a highly secure, cookie-less session security where

1. the authentication process is mandated to a single third party entity (authorization server) that issues access tokens
2. HSP acts as proxy to resource servers that delegates token validation to the login service
3. a validated access token represents the identifier to an internal session with a given lifetime

4.19.8.2 Configuration

Configuration steps

1. SRM: Enable ESR Bearer using the directive [SE_Ext_Enable](#). Allow ESR Bearer using the [SE_Ext_Allow](#) directive.
2. SRM: To serve clients that are not able to handle redirections "Internal Login Redirects" and "Request Replaying after login" must be enabled. See [AC_InternalLoginRedirect](#) and [HGW_Aai_ReplayOnLogin](#).

4.19.8.3 Notes

As the level of security of ESR Bearer is based on the security of used access tokens it is of high importance that tokens show an adequate entropy (which is strongly related to the length of access tokens). HSP does not enforce a minimum or maximum length for access tokens therefore it is very important that corresponding authorization servers are well configured.

4.20 Fail-Over and Load-Balancing Configuration

4.20.1 Introduction

This section describes Load Balancing and Failover functionalities in HTTP 1.1 Gateway. There are two modules, each focussing on a different range of functions: `mod_hgw_fo` and `mod_hgw_balancer`.

Please note that the functionalities of `mod_hgw_fo` and `mod_hgw_balancer` can not be mixed. However, using both modules together on different locations (or even sub-locations) is entirely possible.



4.20.2 mod_hgw_balancer

4.20.2.1 Overview

The following features are available:

- Load balancing among multiple back-end hosts
- Failover
- Stickiness
- Redirection to error page (on dedicated server) in case all back-end hosts are offline
- Support of forward proxies with failover functionality
- Health checks

4.20.3 Configuration Settings

The *mod_hgw_balancer* module is based on the functionalities of *mod_proxy_balancer* and thus requires a balancer to be defined using the *Proxy* directive. As a simple example, the following configuration block defines a balancer and three balancer members.

```
<Proxy balancer://example-balancer>
  BalancerMember https://www.example.com
  BalancerMember https://www2.example.com
  BalancerMember https://www3.example.com
</Proxy>
```

To use a balancer for a specific Location, the directive [HGW_Balancer](#) is used. With the following example requests to */balanced* are distributed among to the three back-end servers of the balancer stated above.

```
<Location /balanced>
  HGW_Balancer example-balancer
  HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL
</Location>
```

When specifying a forward proxy by use of [HGW_Proxy](#), the communication to the selected back-end server is performed via a HTTP tunnel. With multiple forward proxies failover gets enabled. Please note that forward proxies can only be used if SSL to back-end servers is enabled.

```
<Location /balanced>
  HGW_Balancer example-balancer
  HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL

  HGW_Proxy proxy1:80 proxy2:80
</Location>
```

In order to enable session stickiness, balancer members must be extended with route information and the setting *ProxySet stickysession=route* must be set. This causes route information of each session to be stored in the session store so that all requests of a session can be routed to the same back-end server.

```
<Proxy balancer://example-balancer>
  BalancerMember https://www.example.com route=1
  BalancerMember https://www2.example.com route=2
  BalancerMember https://www3.example.com route=3
```



```
ProxySet stickysession=route
</Proxy>
```

The environment variable *BALANCER_ENV_PARAM* can be used to force a specific route. For example, the Location */balanced* can be extended with *SetEnvIf* or *SetEnvIfExpr* statements that manipulate the route selection of the balancer during runtime.

```
<Location /balanced>
  HGW_Balancer example-balancer
  HGW_EnableSSLServerCert ALLOW_ALL

  SetEnvIf HSP_CLIENT_ADDR "172\.17\.2\." BALANCER_ENV_PARAM=route.1
  SetEnvIfExpr "%{REQUEST_URI} in { '/balanced/route2', '/balanced/route2/sub' }" ←
    BALANCER_ENV_PARAM=route.2
</Location>
```

To monitor back-end servers health checks can be activated. The full set of functionalities of the *mod_proxy_hcheck* module can be used. The following simple example causes a GET request to */hcheck.php* every 5 seconds, expecting that members of the balancer response with status 200. If a health check fails the corresponding back-end is no longer considered for load balancing until the next positive check.

```
ProxyHCEExpr expr200 {%{REQUEST_STATUS} =~ /^200/}
ProxyHCTemplate temp200 hcmethod=GET hcexpr=expr200 hcinterval=5 hcuri=/hcheck. ←
  php

<Proxy balancer://example-balancer>
  BalancerMember https://www.example.com hctemplate=temp200
  BalancerMember https://www2.example.com hctemplate=temp200
  BalancerMember https://www3.example.com hctemplate=temp200
</Proxy>
```

Please note that the official website of *mod_proxy_hcheck* provides detailed documentation on all health check features.

In addition, if clients should be redirected to an error page in case all back-end servers are unavailable, the directive [HGW_BalancerErrorRedirect](#) should be used.

4.20.4 mod_hgw_fo

4.20.4.1 Overview

The following features are available:

- Load distribution among multiple hosts
- Load balancing among multiple hosts. A specific server must return load information in a HTTP response header
- Stickiness
- Selection of instance by using hard or soft rules

4.20.4.2 Fail-Over Behavior

The table below shows the fail-over behavior of *mod_hgw_fo* depending on configuration settings.



Table 60: mod_hgw_fo - Failover behavior

Directive HGW_FO_Enable	Directive HGW_FO_Idempotent	Sticky on current host	Event	Action taken by Http 1.1 Gateway
Off	Off	does not care	Connection Failure	Returns error state (5xx) to the client
Off	Off	does not care	No answer from server	Returns error state (5xx) to the client.
On	does not care	no	Connection Failure	Tries to connect the next configured server immediately. If all configured hosts have been tried, waits 1 second between attempts.
On	does not care	yes	Connection Failure	Tries to connect the current server for half the connection timeout, then tries to connect alternative server(s). If all configured hosts have been tried, waits 1 second between attempts.
On	On	no	No answer from server	Retries the request once on the next server.
On	On	yes	No answer from server	Retries the request once on the same server.
On	Switch	does not care	No answer from server	Retries the request once on the next server.

4.20.4.3 Stickiness

If no error occurs, a client stays on the server selected with the first request. It is not possible to deactivate stickiness.

4.20.4.4 Fail-Over and HTTP 1.1 persistent Connections

[\[RFCHTTP1.1\]](#) states that clients must repeat request sent on reused connections if the server closes the connection instead of sending a response. Therefore, Http 1.1 Gateway does not repeat requests on re-used connections.

4.20.4.5 Host Selection

If more than one host is configured for a location and Fail-Over is activated, the Http 1.1 Gateway (HGW) uses the following procedure to select the next host. If a host has found, the process finishes.

1. Is there valid sticky information which specifies the last host? Reuse the last used host.
2. Is there a matching select rule, specified with directive "["HGW_FO_SelectRule"](#)? If yes, use the host specified by the matching rule.
3. Is load balancing enabled?
 - a. Get the next host without penalty and minimal load (if any).
 - b. Get next host with penalty and minimal load.
4. If load balancing is not enabled, round-robin load distribution will take place and the next host is used. Penalties are still applied.



4.20.4.6 Host Selection with Proxies

If proxies are specified, instead of the list of hosts, a list of proxy to host pairs is used for fail-over and load-balancing. This list of pairs is handled just like the list of hosts alone is handled if no proxies are defined, with the following exception: If the TCP connection to a proxy fails, the penalty is set on all proxy to host pairs that go via that proxy.

Example: Suppose two Hosts H1 and H2 are configured (ports omitted for readability) and three proxies P1 to P3. The internally generated list of proxy to host pairs is then "P1>H1 P2>H1 P3>H1 P1>H2 P2>H2 P3>H2". If P1>H1 fails, then a penalty is set on P1>H1 and - if the TCP connect to P1 failed - also on P1>H2. If P1>H1 was the first combination ever tried, the next attempt would be P2>H1, i.e. failover usually goes via a different proxy to the same host, which is normally preferable since the session to the host is preserved in this case.

4.20.4.7 Configuration Directives

The following configuration directives described in chapter "[SRM Directives](#)" affect fail-over and load-balancing with *mod_hgw_fo*.

- [HGW_Host](#) (to define servers to use)
- [HGW_Proxy](#) (to define forward proxies to use)
- [HGW_FO_Enable](#)
- [HGW_FO_Idempotent](#)
- [HGW_FO_PenaltyCounter](#)
- [HGW_FO_LoadBalancing](#)
- [HGW_FO_SelectRule](#)
- [HGW_ConnectTimeOut](#)
- [HGW_TimeOut \(Listeners\)](#), [HGW_TimeOut \(SRM\)](#)
 - IMPORTANT: To prevent HTL and HTS Listeners from sending a 5xx status code to the client too early, the [HGW_TimeOut](#) of the HTL and HTS Listeners must be greater than the [HGW_TimeOut](#) of the SRM.

4.21 Setting Action on IP/SSL SID Change

4.21.1 Overview

This feature allows to take action if the client's IP address or its SSL Session id changed. Currently, only logging is supported and this functionality should be used for diagnostic purposes only.

4.21.2 Configuration Steps

HTTP header `SSLSessionID` is required for SSL Session Id change, `HSP_CLIENT_ADDR` for IP change.

If using the HTTP 1.1 Gateway, the alias `%HSP_std` can be used. In all other cases, this headers must be manually configured.

Use directives "[SE_OnClientIpChange](#)" and "[SE_OnClientSslSidChange](#)" to specify the actions, see configuration reference for details.



4.22 Configure Data Recording

The data recording facility implements a similar service to a voice recorder used for telephone banking systems. The data recording is used to reconstruct the actions taken by a client using online services protected by the HSP. The data recording facility is used to record all data transferred between a client and the HSP.

See section "[SRM - Recorder Directives](#)" for a detailed description of all available command directives concerning the data recording facility.

4.22.1 Data Recording Base Configuration

Specify the destination directory to write the recorded data files to using the [REC_DestDir](#) command within the virtual server configuration.

Pay attention to the fact, that this directory must exist when starting the server. You must also create a directory for each [HSP_Appld](#) directive you have defined. If the [HSP_Appld](#) directive has been specified for a location, the HSP writes all data for the location to a subdirectory of same denominator as the value in the [HSP_Appld](#) directive.

The [REC_RotateTime](#) directive defines the time interval to rotate the recording data files.

4.22.2 Enable Data Recording for a Location

Specify message types you want to record by the [REC_MsgType](#) command for each location.

You have also to define the [REC_ContentType](#) command if you want to record HTTP body data.

4.23 Session Attributes

Session Attributes are sent by the Login Service on successful authentication and may be updated on later interactions with the login service.

Session Attributes are stored within HSP sessions and customize the behavior of SRM for authenticated clients. They are used to generate HTTP headers, supply parameters to the Adaptive Application Integrator, grant user authorizations, define a per-user gateway configuration or to signal dynamic session timeouts to the HSP.

These attributes are set through special HTTP response headers by the login service on successful authentication and cleared if the user logs out. The HSP also sends existing session attributes to the login service if an authenticated user accesses the login service again.

Session Attributes are also a more powerful replacement for the "User Data" ("Login Credentials") header.

4.23.1 When To Create Session Attribute Headers

Note that the HSP accepts Session Attribute headers from the login service only if the login service also sets the "AccessArea" header at the same time!

4.23.2 Session Attribute Header Syntax

The login service must set a HTTP header with the following syntax in order to create an HSP session attribute:

Header name:

HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-<no>

Where <no> is a numeric counter, beginning with 0 and counting up. The number has no preceding zeroes. There must be no gaps in the numbering!

Header value:



```
usage="", name="", path="", value="", vtype="", encoding="", timeout=""
```

Some of these key/value pairs are mandatory, others are optional. For each key/value pair, the following rules apply:

- The key must be an alphanumeric string.
- The value must be a string enclosed in double quotation marks. Any forms of escaping are not supported.

This is a typical example of a Session Attribute header created by the login service:

```
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-1'=' usage="prop-header", name="userid", path="/intranet ←
    ", value="jmiller", encoding="url"
```

The most important key to note is `usage`. It defines the semantical meaning of the entire header, and also what the contents of the other keys can or must be. See the following chapters for details.

4.23.2.1 Session Attribute Header Keys

A session attribute header can consist of the following keys:

Table 61: Keys of an HSP Session Attribute Header

Key	Mandatory	Description
<code>usage</code>	yes	Specifies the attribute class (<code>usage</code>). The meaning of the header and the contents of the other keys and values all depend on the value of this key. See "4.20.3 Usage Types" for supported values and usage details.
<code>name</code>	yes	Specifies the attribute name. This name must be unique within the same location (<code>path</code>) and <code>usage</code> . The name can contain any alphanumeric character, spaces are not allowed.
<code>path</code>	yes	Specifies the attribute path. An attribute is only evaluated if its path includes (is below or equal) the current URI. An attribute is only valid within the authorized path of the current session. The path is always relative to the current virtual server. Must not have a "/" at the end.
<code>value</code>	yes	Specifies the attribute value. In the case of a reference attribute, the value may contain the name of the referenced value attribute. See "10.3.1 Value Type (vtype=)" .
<code>vtype</code>	no	Defines the value type; see "4.20.4.5 vtype" for details.
<code>encoding</code>	no	Defines the encoding of the value of the key "value". See "4.20.2.2 Supported Encodings" for details on supported encoding types.
<code>timeout</code>	no	Only used for <code>usage="ac-app-az"</code> See "4.20.3.4 Application Authorization Identifier (usage="ac-app-az")" for more details

4.23.2.2 Supported Encodings

The key `encoding` can have one of the following values:



Table 62: Supported value encodings

url :	<i>(default)</i> The " value " must be URL encoded. Example header part for a case where the content of the " value " key is a string " acme:3000 ": ...value="acme%3A3000" encoding="url"...
base64 :	The " value " is a Base64 string, containing binary data.
string :	Supported for backwards compatibility only: Means that the " value " is not encoded at all (just a plain ASCII string). Example header part for a case where the content of the " value " key is a string " acme:3000 ": ...value="acme:3000" encoding="string"...

4.23.2.3 Supported values for the "vtype" key

The following values can be used for the "vtype" key:

Table 63: "vtype" value list

direct	<i>(default)</i> The " value " directly contains the actual value.
ref	The actual value is stored in another (referenced) attribute. The purpose of this is to save space and network bandwidth, if multiple session attributes should be created which all contain the same value. The " value " of this attribute just contains the name of the referenced attribute. The " vtype " of the referenced attribute must be " value ".
value	This attribute is being referenced by another one which has " vtype " set to " ref " and " value " to the name of this attribute.

See ["4.20.4.5 vtype"](#) for an example on how to use referenced attribute values.

4.23.3 Usage Types

4.23.3.1 HTTP Header Propagation (usage="prop-header")

Session attributes of this usage type cause the HSP to generate HTTP headers which are sent to application servers and the Login Service with all subsequent requests after a successful login.

If more than one HTTP Header attribute with the same name match the request's URI, a single HTTP Header is generated where only the most exact match is used.

- "name" specifies directive name
- "value" is used as the header content.

4.23.3.2 Gateway Parameter (usage="gw-param")

A set of directives in the SRM Gateways, such as the HTTP 1.1 Gateway, can be set using Attributes of this class.

See [SRM - HTTP 1.1 Gateway](#) for supported directives.

- "name" specifies the directive name,
- "value" specifies the first parameter, leave empty ("") if unused
- "param" may specify subsequent parameters.



4.23.3.3 AAI Parameter (usage="aai-param")

This type is used to set variables which are retrieved by the Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI). See [4.21 Adaptive Application Integrator \(AAI\)](#) for AAI rules.

- "name" specifies the variable's name,
- "value" specifies the variable's value

4.23.3.4 Application Authorization Identifier (usage="ac-app-az")

This usage type is used to set the application authorization identifier (az) variables which are used for the per application authorization functions.

Only one application authorization identifier must be set for a location (path) and the name must correspond to the definition in the SRM. See also the [AC_RequireAz](#) command.

- "name" string which specifies the application authorization identifier
- "value" = "allow"
- Optional "timeout" in seconds to specify idle timeout of this authorization

4.23.3.5 Session Timeout Parameter (usage="ac-cred-tmo")

This usage type is used to signal session credential timeouts to the SRM. This attributes correspond to the existing directives AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout, AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod and AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger and can carry all variants of timeout settings, including individual settings per security class. The property "name" is used to signal the intended timeout setting.

Possible values for the "name" property are:

- "CredentialFinalTimeout": to set AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout for both security classes.
- "CredentialValidityPeriod": to set AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod for both security classes.
- "CredentialUpdateTrigger": to set AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger for both security classes.
- "CredentialFinalTimeoutMember": to set AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout for the security class "Member"
- "CredentialFinalTimeoutCustomer": to set AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout for the security class "Customer"
- "CredentialValidityPeriodMember": to set AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod for the security class "Member"
- "CredentialValidityPeriodCustomer": to set AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod for the security class "Customer"
- "CredentialUpdateTriggerMember": to set AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger for the security class "Member"
- "CredentialUpdateTriggerCustomer": to set AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger for the security class "Customer"

The value attribute must contain a timeout (in seconds) within the range specified via the corresponding directive, otherwise SRM increases or decreases the timeout to the allowed minimum or maximum according to the directive. See [AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout](#), [AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger](#) and [AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod](#) directives for details on configuration.

Let's assume the following definition of AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout in the configuration file:

```
AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout member=1000-1500,customer=1200-2500
```



If the login service sends `name="CredentialFinalTimeoutMember" value="1800" ...`, SRM decreases the timeout to 1500 seconds.

If the login service sends `name="CredentialFinalTimeout" value="800" ...`, SRM increases the timeout to 1000 seconds for class "Member" and to 1200 seconds for class "Customer".

Note that the path attribute value must correspond the path of the credential ([AC_AuthorizedPath](#)). Attributes set outside the credential's path are rejected.

Note that timeouts sent from login service must not be higher than timeouts used for the session store ([SE_SessionStore_InactiveTimeOut](#) and [SE_SessionStore_FinalTimeOut](#)). If timeouts are not harmonized it could lead to session data clean-up before credentials expire.

4.23.4 Examples

The following examples shows Session Attributes as they can be set by the Login Service using HTTP Headers.

4.23.4.1 Basic

```
name="TestHeader1", path="/d1", value="V1", usage="prop-header"
```

Causes the SRM to generate a header named "TestHeader1" having value "V1" for each access to location /d1 and below.

4.23.4.2 Gateway Parameter

```
usage="gw-param", name="HGW_Host", path="/d1", value="as.foo.com:1234"s  
usage="gw-param", name="HGW_ForceHost", path="/d1/foo", value="as3.foo.com:1234"
```

If configured, the SRM's HTTP 1.1 Gateway sets [HGW_Host](#), [HGW_ForceHost](#) as to the defined values for the specified path and below.

4.23.4.3 Session Timeout Parameter

In the following you can find examples for all possible headers with usage "ac-cred-tmo", note that this is a special case as the header MUST NOT contain the "path" attribute:

```
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-0: name="CredentialFinalTimeout", value="7200", usage ↔  
="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-1: name="CredentialValidityPeriod", value="900", usage ↔  
="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-2: name="CredentialUpdateTrigger", value="1350", usage ↔  
="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-3: name="CredentialFinalTimeoutMember", value="7200", ↔  
usage="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-4: name="CredentialFinalTimeoutCustomer", value ↔  
="14400", usage="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-5: name="CredentialValidityPeriodMember", value ↔  
="7200", usage="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-6: name="CredentialValidityPeriodCustomer", value ↔  
="14400", usage="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-7: name="CredentialUpdateTriggerMember", value="1350", ↔  
usage="ac-cred-tmo"  
HSP_AC_SESSION_ATTRIBUTES-8: name="CredentialUpdateTriggerCustomer", value ↔  
="2700", usage="ac-cred-tmo"
```



4.23.4.4 Exact Match

```
usage="prop-header", name="TestHeader1", path="/d1", value="V1"  
usage="prop-header", name="TestHeader1", path="/d1/d2", value="V2"
```

This sample shows the "most exact match" rule applied by the SRM.. The attributes cause the SRM to generate a HTTP header named "TestHeader1" having value "V1" for each access to location /d1 and below not including location /d1/d2 and below. The value used for location /d1/d2 and below is "V2"

4.23.4.5 vtype

```
usage="prop-header", name="TestHeaderValue", value=="Value==", path="/d1/ ↵  
member", vtype="value"  
usage="prop-header", name="TestHeader1", value="TestHeaderValue", path="/d1/ ↵  
member", vtype="ref"  
usage="prop-header", name="TestHeader2", value="TestHeaderValue", path="/d1/ ↵  
member", vtype="ref"
```

The definitions above cause the HSP to generate two HTTP headers named " TestHeader1 " and " TestHeader2 ", both using the same, shared value " ==Value== " referenced by the value attribute with name" TestHeaderValue ".

4.24 Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI)

4.24.1 Overview

The Adaptive Application Integrator (AAI) is a sub-component of SRM's HTTP 1.1 Gateway. The AAI analyses requests to Application Servers (AS) and their responses. Depending on the results of this analysis, the AAI can do further actions.

Actions include generating new request with dynamic parameters, redirecting the client to arbitrary locations or replaying the updated original request. Typically, these actions are hidden from the client.

Based on AAI, following features are currently implemented:

- Redirect client to Login Service if AS returns HTTP Status 401
- "AAI Custom Rules"

4.24.2 Processing Order Details

Within the HTTP 1.1 Gateway, the HTTP request sent to the Application Server (AS) and the HTTP response from AS is analyzed and updated by multiple functionality blocks contained in the HTTP 1.1 Gateway.

The processing order becomes important when a functionality block accesses request or response attributes/contents which have been already been changed by another functionality block.

The image below shows the HTTP 1.1 Gateway functionality blocks and shows the processing order in detail.

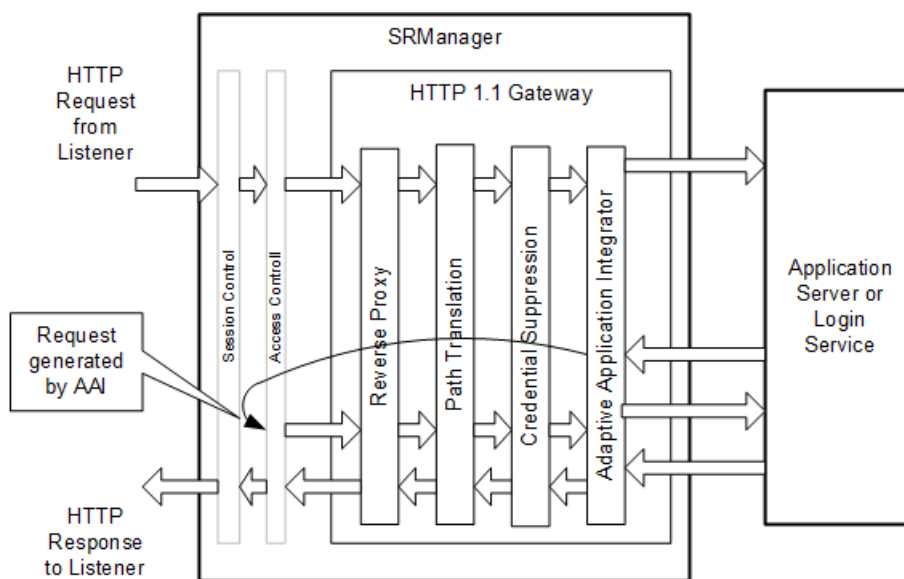


Figure 3: HTTP 1.1 Gateway - Functionality Blocks

Functionality Block "Reverse Proxy"

This block implements the Reverse Proxy functionality. This functionality is always in place and cannot be disabled.

- For HTTP requests, this block removes HTTP headers not defined with the ["HGW_RequestHeaders"](#) directive. Then it "proxyfies" the request so it can be sent to the AS. Proxyfication includes the HTTP "Connection" and the HTTP "Host" Header.
- For HTTP responses, it updates the host and port of HTTP "Location" headers (302 responses).

Functionality Block "Path Translation"

This block applies optional, additional path translations which is used to integrate Application Servers which do not support Reverse Proxies or the URI path used to access the server does not match the path used by the client to access this server. Further, this block can handle HTML pages using absolute links.

- For HTTP requests, this block applies additional path translations to the request URI defined with directives ["HGW_TranslatePath"](#), ["HGW_TranslateParameters"](#).
- For HTTP responses, this block applies path translation to the HTTP "Location" header configured with directive ["HGW_ResFit_Substitute"](#).

Functionality Block "Credentials Suppression"

This block is controlled by directive ["HGW_NoLoginUserDataHeaderUntil401"](#) and suppresses sending of Login Credentials until the server explicitly requests them. If the server request credentials, the request is replayed using the credentials.

Functionality Block "Adaptive Application Integration"

This block implements the AAI functionality and is controlled using the ["HGW_Aai_"](#) directives. Configured actions are executed if the request or response matches configured conditions. Actions include generating new request, returning redirects (HTTP status 302) or replaying the - optionally updated - original request.



4.24.3 Generation of new Requests

- New requests are always generated using the original request as a template. Therefore, request filtering (directive `HGW_RequestHeaders`) is done for each generated request using the original request.
- Generated requests targeting other locations than the original request's location, use the configuration directives of the new location except the following directives which are taken from the original location:
 - Directives starting with `HGW_Aai_`
 - Directive `HGW_RequestBodyBuffer`
 - Directive `HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer`
- Generated requests must always use locations using the HTTP 1.1 Gateway.
- Generated requests are processed by all SRM modules as if they were sent by the client, therefore access control is enforced and recording (if enabled) is done (see the image above).

4.24.4 HTTP Request- and Response-Body Buffers

The HTTP request- and response-Body buffers are a central, limiting factor for AAI.

- AAI can save client's POST data up to what is specified with the directive `HGW_RequestBodyBuffer`. If the clients sends a request containing larger POST data than specified, AAI cannot replay POST data for such requests, the POST request is converted to GET. These buffers are not using shared memory like the POST Data Storage which keeps data over a whole login process, settings do not affect the POST Data Storage and vice versa.
- AAI is able to analyze the body of the HTTP responses sent by AS up to the size defined by directive `HGW_ResponseBodyBuffer`. Larger responses are possible, but the remaining part, which does not fit in the buffer, is not analyzed.

At the other side, the HTTP request- and response-Body buffers should be kept small to reduce resource usage and thus prevent Denial-of-Service attacks. Default size is 8kB, if using significant larger buffer sizes, make sure that the installed memory is sufficient to support the configured maximum number of clients (directive `MaxClients`).

4.25 AAI: Configure Redirect to Login On 401

4.25.1 Overview

The directive `HGW_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401` configures the SRM to redirect the client to the login location if the application returns a "401 Unauthorized" response.

On redirect, a HTTP "302 Found" response is sent to the client which redirects him to the Login Service (LS). The LS can now authenticate the client. After successful authentication, the LS typically redirects the client back to the Requested Page.

This feature is implemented using the Adaptive Application Integrator, see section [Adaptive Application Integrator \(AAI\)](#).

4.25.2 Rule Details

- If the client is already logged in, and the server still returns HTTP status "401 Unauthorized", the response is processed by directive `HGW_Allow401`, which default behavior is to return a "500 Internal Server Error".



4.25.3 Configuration Notes

- This feature is enabled by using directive "["HWG_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401"](#)" in the location where such a behavior is required.
- This feature should be used for public locations only, it has no effect for member locations.
- To propagate the Login Credentials HTTP header, the header must be specified with the directive "["HWG_RequestHeaders"](#)". Sending this header to public locations must be enabled using the "["AC_UserDataTransferToPublic"](#)" directive.
- For redirection, the Login Location specified by directive "["AC_LoginPage"](#)" is used.
- If directive "["HWG_TranslatePath"](#)" is used, directive "["HWG_ResFlt_Substitute"](#)" must be used to translate the "Requested Page" parameter sent to the client. This parameter has to be translated from the Application Server's path to the Client's path. The requested page parameter is URL encoded, so "/" has to be written "%2f", space is "%20". See below for example:

```
# If HWG_TranslatePath and HWG_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401 are used,
# The requested page parameter must be translated path
<Location /foo/bar>
    ...
    HWG_TranslatePath /foo/bar /bar
    HWG_ResFlt_Substitute RequestedPage=%2fbar RequestedPage=%2ffoo%2fbar
    ...
</Location>
```

4.25.4 SRM Configuration Sample

The following sample configuration for SRM shows settings which force unauthenticated clients accessing /test/public and getting a 401 response to be redirected to /test/login. Login Credentials are sent using HTTP header "LoginCredentials". If the application server returns a 401 response despite the client is authenticated, the 401 response is converted into a 403 error message:

```
...
<Location /test>
    AC_LoginPage                /test/login
    AC_AuthorizedPath           /test
    AC_LoginUserDataHeaderName  LoginCredentials
    HWG_RequestHeaders          %HTTP11_std %HSP_std +LoginCredentials
    ...
</Location>

<Location /test/public>
    SetHandler                   http_1_1_gw_handler

    AC_AccessArea                Public
    AC_UserDataTransferToPublic  On

    HWG_Aai_RedirectToLsOn401
    HWG_Host                      as.foo.com:11111

    # Must be configured on HttpsListner too..
    HWG_Allow401                  RC=403
    ...
</Location>
...
```



4.26 AAI: AAI Custom Rules

4.26.1 Introduction

The AAI Custom Rules allow integrating the HSP with Application Servers (AS) not offering an interface to integrate with generic reverse proxies. Typically, such AS offer a HTML based, conversational interface for authentication (e.g. form-based login), which is designed for end users. In the HSP environment, such application-specific form-based logins are unwanted. AAI scripts can be used to integrate with such HTML-based conversational interfaces.

4.26.2 AAI Rule Engine Model

4.26.2.1 Overview

During normal Reverse Proxy operation, the HSP forwards requests from clients to Application Servers (AS) and responses from AS to clients. If the AS response contains a HTML page which has to be handled by AAI (typically a form-based login page), configured AAI **Rules** can be executed. This **Rule** may define actions to send user name and password to the AS. The next AS response (e.g. the successful page) is matched by another **Rule** which typically replays the original request and sets the HSP back to normal Reverse Proxy operation.

This chapter defines the syntactical and semantical details of the "AAI Custom Rules", an example can be found in section ["AAI: Integrating Form-based Authentication"](#).

4.26.2.2 State Number

The separation between normal Reverse Proxy operation and conversation steps handled by AAI is indicated by the **State Number**. During normal Reverse Proxy operation, **State Number** is 0. Each AS response which has to be handled separately must have its own **State Number**.

AAI Scripts consist of a **Conditional Expression** and a set of **Actions**, where the **Conditional Expression** must contain a **State Number**. Per AS response, the **Conditional Expression** of zero or one Script can be true. If the **Conditional Expression** matches, the **Actions** of the same **Script** are executed. Each set of **Actions** must set the State to transit to after the **Actions** have been executed.

4.26.2.3 Syntax Definitions

To definition of the syntax is based on BNF where

- optional terminals or non-terminals (or groups of them) are stated by a question mark ("?").
- repetitions (one ore more) are stated by a plus ("+").
- optional repetitions (not once, once ore more) are represented by a star ("**").
- curved brackets are used for grouping.

So a rule is defined by

```
rule = "if ("
      c_state
      c_rc?
      c_local_rc?
      (c_not? c_hdr) *
      c_isreq?
      c_request?
      c_cred?
```



```
a_rule_id?  
c_body* " ) {"  
    a_next  
    a_uri  
    a_meth?  
    a_enct?  
    (a_skip? a_match)*  
    a_replace*  
    a_hdr*  
    a_parm*  
    a_env*  
"}"
```

Each **Rule** consists of a **Conditional Expression** and a set of **Actions**. The **Conditional Expression** must contain a state condition (**c_state**). The conditions are linked using logical AND. The order of the Conditional Expressions does not care.

The set of Actions must define the URI (**a_uri**) and the state to transit to (**a_next**) after the execution of the rule. The order of Actions does not care.

In the following the basic non-terminals are shown that are used by Conditional Expressions and Actions. Subsequently, all particular components of a rule are represented.

```
alpha      = "A" | "B" | "C" | ... | "Z" | "a" | "b" | "c" | ... | "z"
```

```
digit      = "0" | "1" | "2" | "3" | ... | "9"
```

```
digit_no_zero = "1" | "2" | "3" | ... | "9"
```

```
specialchar = "." | "-" | "$" | "_" | "!" | "$"
```

```
token      = (alpha | digit) (alpha | digit | specialchar)
```

```
dbquote    = "
```

Double quote.

```
printablehex = "\x00" | "\x01" | ... | "\xFF"
```

Any printable 8-bit char in hexadecimal.

```
printablechar = <Printable character>
```

Any printable char.

```
quoted_string = dbquote printablechar+ dbquote
```

```
regex      = "<Regular Expression>"
```

An extended regular expression. See shell command "man -s 5 regex" for details on extended regular expressions.

```
http_status = "100" | "101" | "102" | "200" | ... | "226" etc.
```

The list of HTTP status codes as defined in [\[RFCHTTP1.1\]](#).

```
id         = <Identifier>
```



An identifier which is resolved at execution time, see section ["Identifiers"](#) below for the list of all available identifiers.

```
literal      = (printablehex | printablechar)+
```

An ASCII character sequence. The backslash character is supported for escaping. To escape quotes use `\"`, for CR use `\r`, for LF use `\n`, for tTab use `\t`. Any other characters can be specified with its ASCII code in hexadecimal using `\xhh` (e.g. `\x41`).

```
c_state      = STATE "==" digit
```

Condition, that expects the given state. A state is required for each Conditional Expression.

```
c_rc         = RC "==" http_status ("|" http_status)*
```

Condition, that expects the given HTTP status code of the back-end. If multiple codes are stated then the condition is true if one of them matches.

```
c_local_rc   = LOCAL_RC "==" http_status ("|" http_status)*
```

Condition, that expects that the local HTTP status code matches the given status defined by **http_status**. If multiple codes are stated the condition is true if one of them matches.

```
c_hdr        = "HDR." token "==" quoted-string
```

Condition, that expects the HTTP header (defined by **token**) with value defined by **quoted-string** in the list of HTTP response headers from the back-end.

```
c_not        = NOT
```

Negates a condition. Only `c_hdr` is supported.

```
c_isreq      = IS_REQUEST
```

Condition, that the corresponding rule is applied during request processing.

Note: `RETURN_302` does not work on request processing.

```
c_request    = REQUEST "=~" regex
```

Condition, that expects that the given regex matches the request line.

```
c_body       = BODY "=~" regex
```

Condition, that expects that the given regex matches the response body. See [See "6.20.4 HTTP Request- and Response-Body Buffers"](#) for limitations.

```
c_cred       = AC.Client.CredentialsValid "==" ("YES" | "NO")
```

Condition, that expects the credential to be valid ("YES") or invalid ("NO").

```
a_rule_id    = RULE_ID "=" token
```

Sets the ID of a rule that can be used for tracing.

```
a_next       = NEXT_STATE "=" digit
```

Sets the state of the rule to transit to after processing.



```
a_meth      = METHOD "=" (GET | POST | RETURN_302)
```

Defines the method/action to be performed.

GET

create a request using HTTP "GET" method

POST

create a request using HTTP "POST" method

RETURN_302

return a HTTP "302 Moved temporarily" response.

```
a_enct      = BODY_ENCTYPE = multipart/form-data
```

Defines the encoding header to be set for a POST request to the back-end.

multipart/form-data

uses multipart encoding to transmit the form data

Currently, only `multipart/form-data` is supported.

```
a_match     = MATCH "=" regex
```

Applies the regular expression **regex** to the application server response body. The resulting patterns (grouped together using curved brackets) can be used to create dynamic request or response data (e.g. URIs, headers, etc).

```
a_skip      = SKIP "=" regex
```

Used together with **a_match** to position the virtual pointer in the response body. It moves the pointer past the first pattern matching given by the regular expression **regex**.

```
literal_ext = dbquote (literal | "$" digit_no_zero | "${Urlenc." digit "}" | "$ ←  
{" id "}") + dbquote
```

\$1, \$2, etc. in `literal_ext` will be replaced by the result pattern from **a_match**. Please note that **a_match** only supports variables from \$1 to \$9. By use of **Urlenc**, the corresponding result pattern is URL encoded.

Examples:

```
PARAM.myparam = "${Urlenc.2}"  
HDR.myheader  = "${Urlenc.3}"
```

AC

Access control variables, i.e. `AC.SessionAttributes.<identifier>`

GW

HTTP 1.1 Gateway variables, i.e. `GW.Uri.urlenc`

Apache

Internal Apache variables, i.e. `Apache.SERVER_NAME`

Header

Request headers, i.e. `Header.HTTP_USER_AGENT`

**ENV**

Process environment variable which may have been set using the SetEnvIf directive, i.e ENV.request_uri. The ENV value may be encrypted using the ".urlencrypt" suffix in order to be used for redirections to the login location when [AC_HspParameterEncryption](#) has been enabled, i.e. ENV.request_uri.urlencrypt .

```
a_replace = RESPONSE_REPLACE "=" regex literal_ext
```

Specifies a regular expression based "search and replace" operation that will be performed on the incoming response from the back-end.

Example:

```
RESPONSE_REPLACE "<title>(.*?)</title>" "<title>MyCompany - $1</title>"
```

Extends all titles with the company name (e.g. title 'Welcome' becomes 'MyCompany - Welcome');

```
a_uri = URI "=" (literal_ext | FOLLOW_REDIRECT | REPLAY)
```

Specifies the URI to use for the generated message. For responses that should trigger a redirection, the URI is used in the Location header.

FOLLOW_REDIRECT

Follow the Location header of the current response.

REPLAY

Replay the original request.

```
a_hdr = "HDR." token "=" literal_ext
```

Sets a header with the name given by **token** and value **literal_ext** upon next request.

```
a_env = "ENV." token "=" literal_ext
```

Sets the environment variable with the name given by **token** and value given by **literal_ext**.

```
a_parm = "PARAM." token "=" literal_ext
```

Adds a parameter with name given by **token** and value **literal_ext** to the parameter string of the next POST request.

```
a_parm = "RAWBODY" "=" literal_ext
```

Adds a raw body data element with value **literal_ext** to the request body of the next POST request. Multiple elements can be set. The use is mutually exclusive with *PARAM*. *RAWBODY* can only be used with *METHOD* "POST".

4.26.2.4 Additional Semantics

- State number must be below 100.
- If State Number is not 0, each possible AS response should be handled by a Script.
If current State Number is not 0 and the AAI does not find a matching rule, HTTP Status 500 (Internal Server Error) is returned and a log message is written.
- There is not logical "OR" in a single rule. Logical "OR" has to be implemented using multiple rules.
- If more than one rule matches, HTTP status 500 (Internal Server Error is returned) to client.



4.26.2.5 Identifiers

For constructing parameter strings, the following identifiers are supported.

Table 64: AAI - Identifiers for parameter strings.

Identifier	Description
AC.Configuration.LoginPage.urlenc	The configured login page, URL encoded
AC.SessionAttributes.<id>	The session attribute with the name <id>, see section Session Attributes for details.
GW.Uri.urlenc	The URI used to send to the application server with the last request, URL encoded.
GW.Uri.urlencrypt	The URI used to generate a redirect to the login service (RequestedPage). The URI is encrypted, see also AC_HspParameterEncryption .
Apache.HTTP_USER_AGENT	User-Agent header. Obsolete use HDR.User-Agent instead
Apache.HTTP_REFERER	Referer header. Obsolete use HDR.Referer instead
Apache.HTTP_COOKIE	Cookie header. Obsolete use HDR.Cookie instead
Apache.HTTP_FORWARDED	Forwarded header. Obsolete use HDR.Forwarded instead
Apache.HTTP_HOST	Host header. Obsolete use HDR.Host instead
Apache.HTTP_PROXY_CONNECTION	Proxy-Connection header. Obsolete use HDR.Proxy-Connection instead
Apache.HTTP_ACCEPT	Accept header. Obsolete use HDR.Accept instead
Apache.REMOTE_ADDR	Client address
Apache.REMOTE_PORT	Client ephemeral port
Apache.REMOTE_HOST	Client host name
Apache.REMOTE_USER	Client user name
Apache.REMOTE_IDENT	Client id
Apache.THE_REQUEST	The hole request line with all queries
Apache.REQUEST_METHOD	Request method i.e. GET, POST, HEAD, PUT, ...
Apache.REQUEST_URI	URL without query
Apache.PATH_INFO	Path information
Apache.QUERY_STRING	Query string only
Apache.AUTH_TYPE	Authentication type
Apache.IS_SUBREQ	Returns string "true" if it is a subrequest else returns "false"
Apache.DOCUMENT_ROOT	Path of configured document root
Apache.SERVER_ADMIN	Configured server admin name of given virtual host
Apache.SERVER_NAME	Configured server name of given virtual host
Apache.SERVER_ADDR	Configured virtual host IP address.
Apache.SERVER_PORT	Configured virtual host port.
Apache.SERVER_PROTOCOL	Protocol i.e. HTTP/1.1, HTTP/1.0, HTTP/0.9
Apache.SERVER_SOFTWARE	Get servers version number.
Apache.API_VERSION	Apaches module version number %d:%d i.e. 20051115:30
Apache.urlenc.<Entry>	The same as above but URL encoded.
Header.<header-name>	Obsolete use HDR.<header-name> instead
HDR.<header-name>	Content of specified <header-name>
HDR.urlenc.<header-name>	URL encoded <header-name> content
ENV.<environment-variable>	Content of specified <environment-variable>
ENV.urlenc.<environment-variable>	URL encoded content of specified <environment-variable>
ENV.urlencrypt.<environment-variable>	URL encrypted content of specified <environment-variable>



4.27 AAI: Integrating Form-based Authentication

4.27.1 Overview, Goals

This chapter describes how to integrate an application using form-based authentication into an SSO environment controlled by the HSP and the Login Service (SLS).

The goal of this integration is to completely integrate the application with the HSP's access control enforcement and session handling. The application's session handling and authentication messages (HTML pages, redirects) have to be removed from the client's view.

Before starting, you have to be familiar with AAI, see sections "[Adaptive Application Integrator \(AAI\)](#)" and "[AAI Custom Rules](#)".

4.27.2 System Description, Presumptions

- The application is running on an Application Server protected by the HSP (Access Area "Member" or "Customer").
- On Login to Login Service (LS/SLS), LS delivers user name and password using session attributes (see also section [Session Attributes](#)).
- Password synchronization with the application's password database is assumed.

4.27.3 Step 1: Analyzing the Application

To integrate Form Base Authentication (FBA) using AAI, the behavior of the application must be analyzed in the following aspects:

1. The "Access Denied" response.
How is a denied access presented? For example, the application may return a HTTP 302 "Moved temporarily" message targeting a specific location.
2. Login Form parameter names.
Which parameters are passed to the application server? How are they send to the application server. If the login process consists of multiple steps, each step must be analyzed.
3. "Successful Login" response:
What happens on successful login? The "Successful Login" response might be a HTTP 302 "Moved temporarily" message back to the original location.
4. "Session Timeout" response.
Depending on the application server, it might be necessary to check response for a "Session Timeout" response, which has to be handled by a separate rule.
5. Other session-related responses
Since the Applications Session handling and Authentication have to be controlled completely, it might be necessary to catch other session related messages.

4.27.4 Step 2: Writing the Rules

- For each AS response, which cannot be forwarded to client and has to be handled by AAI, a State number has to be selected.
- For each supported State transition (state change), a rule has to be written.
- To reference the Session Attribute in parameters, use identifier `AC.SessionAttribute.<attribute_name>`.
- Configure rules using directive "[HGW_Aai_AddRule](#)". The rule can be written using multiple lines, use Apache line continuation syntax ("\n" at end of line).



4.27.5 Sample Rules

Sample setup:

- Application using Form-based Authentication
- Application is located under /member/app1
- On denied access, application returns "303 Moved Temporarily" to "/test/app1/login".
- On successful login, application returns a HTML page containing with a title containing the word "success".

First rule matches the "Access Denied" message. The specified action sends the login request using a HTTP POST request. The parameters used are "user" and "password" which are taken from Access controls session attributes.

```
HGW_Aai_AddRule if ( STATE == 0 \
                    RC == 303 \
                    HDR.Location ==* "/member/app1/login" ) \
{ \
    METHOD = POST \
    URI = /member/app1/login \
    PARAM.user = AC.SessionAttributes.UserName \
    PARAM.pass = AC.SessionAttributes.Password \
    NEXT_STATE = 1 \
}
```

Note that this login request could also be send in "application/json" format using RAWBODY:

```
HGW_Aai_AddRule if ( STATE == 0 ↔
\
                    RC == 303 ↔
\
                    HDR.Location ==* "/member/app1/login" ) ↔
{ ↔
\
    METHOD = POST ↔
\
    HDR.Content-Type = "application/json" ↔
\
    URI = /member/app1/login ↔
\
    RAWBODY = "{ \"user\": \"${AC.SessionAttributes.UserName} ↔
                \", \"pass\": \"${AC.SessionAttributes.Password} ↔
                \" }" \
    NEXT_STATE = 1 ↔
\
}
```



This second rule matches the "Successful Login" response and brings the HSP/AAI back to normal Reverse Proxy operation (NEXT_STATE = 0).

```
HGW_Aai_AddRule if ( STATE == 1           \  
                    RC == 200           \  
                    BODY =~ "<title>.*success.*</title>" ) \  
                    {                   \  
                        URI = REPLAY     \  
                        NEXT_STATE = 0   \  
                    }                   \  
}
```

4.27.6 Further Notes

If matching the response body, make sure the buffers hold the matched HTML source. See section ["HTTP Request- and Response-Body Buffers"](#).

4.28 Secure Zone Gateway (SZGW) Configuration

4.28.1 Introduction

A Secure Zone Gateway (SZGW) is a stand-alone SRM which typically has routing and access control functionality only.

The most important difference is that the SZGW *receives* HSP Session information such as the HSP Session Credentials, the Session Attributes and the "User Data" header instead of *retrieving* them from the Session Store as the SRM does.

This sections contains instructions on how to set a Secure Zone Gateway (SZGW). In this section, the SZGW is always referred as SZGW, the standard SRM always as "SRM".

The SZGW is configured as virtual server within a SRM.

4.28.2 Installing a Standalone SZGW

4.28.2.1 Installation

If the SZGW should run without the Listeners on a dedicated host. The HttpListener and the HttpsListeners instances are deactivated as long as no configuration file is installed for these components.

4.28.3 Configuring the SRM's SZGW Location

1. Generate a key pair to secure the HSP credentials between SRM and SZGW. This step is required if the SZGW runs on a different host as the SRM. The key pair should be generated using an external key generator which generates a RSA public key (certificate) and its private key using two separate PEM files, where private key file must not be password protected. See section ["Generate Key Pair using Demo CA"](#) for how to generate a key pair using the Demo CA which is installed with the SES base package.
2. Deploy the generated certificate (public key) in directory `/opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl`, deploy the generated private key in directory `/opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl/private`.
3. For non-public locations, configure SRM's Access Control to generate HSP Session Credentials and Session Attributes using directive `"AC_SendSessionCred"`. Specify generated private key and a safe pass phrase.
4. Configure HTTP 1.1 Gateway to access destination host (SZGW) and forward required HTTP headers. The use of the `"HSP_ForceHost"` directive is required if using a name based virtual host and the SRM instance for SZGW. (Use alias `%HSP_std` in HTTP 1.1 Gateway).



Sample configuration

```
<Location /member/szgw>
  SetHandler          http_1_1_gw_handler
  HGW_Host            szgw.example.com:5678
  HGW_RequestHeaders %HTTP11_std %HSP_std %HSP_ssl

  AC_AccessArea      Member
  AC_LoginPage       /webapp/sls/login
  AC_SendSessionCred /opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl/private/szgw.example.com.key.pem: ←
                    secret_pass_phase
</Location>
```

4.28.4 Setting up the Virtual Server for SZGW

4.28.4.1 Deploy generated certificate and key files

1. If using a stand-alone SZGW Instance, deploy the generated certificate (public key) in directory `/opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl`, deploy the generated private key in directory `/opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl/private`.

4.28.4.2 Configuration of the Virtual Server for SZGW

Since most directives must be copied over unchanged from the SRM, the configuration for the SZGW should be derived from SRM configuration.

The SZGW must have its own Virtual Host which can be derived from the SRM's Virtual Host. The Virtual Host should be port-based to avoid any configuration mistakes.

Make sure that the directive "HGW_Host" in the SRM exactly matches the Virtual Host specification in the SZGW. Otherwise, translation for HTTP "Host" and "Location" headers will not work.

1. Copy over the configuration files from the SRM and identify the location which are handled by the SZGW. Remove all unused "VirtualHost" sections. Remove all "Location" sections which are below or on the same level than the accessed location(s).
Do not remove location above the accessed location(s), since this may remove merged settings!
 2. Virtual Server Configuration:
The SZGW must have its own Virtual Server.
 - Disable Cookie Check
 - Set virtual server name which must match the host and port set in the SRM. (Example: directive HGW_Host).
1. Setup internal session handling. Configure required (or all) cookies as "transparent". Disable cookie check.
 2. The following Access Control directives must be set to the same values as in the SRM:
 - Virtual Host settings
 - AC_HspCredentialSignatureScheme (only if set in SRM)
 - AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod
 - AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout
 - AC_HspCredentialUpdateTrigger (only if set in SRM)
 - Location Settings, watch for merged settings:
 - AC_AccessArea



- AC_AuthorizedPath
- AC_LoginPage

3. Enable Gateway using directive "AC_Gateway On"

Sample configuration file is shown below:

```
...
<VirtualHost szgw.example.com:5678>
  # Session: External Representation
  SE_ExtCookie_NoCookieCheck

  # Session Internal Handling
  SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookies    SessionCredentials

  # The next directives must match SRM's directives from szgw location or above
  AC_HspCredentialPassPhrase        12345678
  AC_HspCredentialCertificatePath    /opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl/private/szgw.example.com ↔
  .key.pem
  AC_HspCredentialPrivateKeyPath     /opt/usp/hsp/srm/ssl/private/szgw.example.com ↔
  .cert.pem

  <Location /member/szgw>
    ...

    # Must match SRM's configuration
    AC_Access_Area                   Member
    AC_HspCredentialSignatureScheme  symmetric    # only if sepecified in SRM
    AC_HspCredentialValidityPeriod   1200
    AC_HspCredentialFinalTimeout     86400

    # Enable SZGW
    AC_Gateway    On
    ...
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

4.28.4.3 Generate Key Pair using Demo CA

As root:

```
> cd /opt/uspTSSP/bin
```

If Demo ca has not already unitized (democa/certs/CAcert.pem) does not exist:

```
> ./genCA
> ./genCACert
```

To generate Key pair with name szgw_host.example.com:

```
> RAND_BITS=1024 ./genServerCert szgw_host.example.com
```

The command above prompts for certificate attributes, which are not used for the SZGW. Enter something meaningful, see below for example:



```
Country Name (ISO 2 letter code) [GB]: CH
State or Province Name (full name) [West Yorkshire]: Zurich
Locality Name (city, town, etc.) [Leeds]: Zurich
Organization Name (company) [My Company Ltd]:Example AG
Organizational Unit Name (division) []:
Common Name (full qualified domain name) []: szgw.example.com
```

Now, the generated files (see output) can be used. Protect the private key against unauthorized access.

4.28.5 SZGW Architectural notes

Although sessions are stored in the SZGW, subsequent request cannot access this sessions. This behaviour is usually wanted.

4.29 Request Filtering

Request filtering includes the validation of the following request components:

Request Line

The request line is restricted by the following filter:

- Only defined locations are accessible.
- Valid request line (syntax, character set, length).
- Allowed request method, see [RF_ServerAllowMethod](#) and [RF_LocationAllowMethod](#) directives.
- Protection using URL encryption, see section "[URL Encryption](#)".
- Protection using `mod_security/mod_qos` rules, see section "[Request Line Filter](#)".
- Additional custom rules either using `mod_security` or `mod_qos`.

Http Headers

The incoming HTTP headers are filtered as follows:

- Only defined headers are forwarded to the application, see [HGW_RequestHeaders](#) directive.
- Headers (or a part of its value) can be filtered, see [RF_ServerRequestHeaderEntryDeny](#) and other RF header filter directives.
- Header are validated against the RFC specification, see section "[Header Validation](#)".
- Additional custom rules using `mod_security` or `mod_qos`.

Data validation

Incoming data (POST/GET) can be validated using the following filter:

- HTML form validation, see section "[HTML Form Validation](#)".
- Parameter validation, see [RF_Param*](#) directives.
- SOAP/XML message validation, see section "[SOAP/XML Validation](#)".
- Data validation using the provided `mod_security/mod_qos` rule set implementation a black-list of forbidden parameter values. See the sample configuration files for details.
- Data validation using static whitelist patterns. See section "[Static White-Lists](#)".



4.29.1 Request Line Filter

A generic request line rule set, which can be used either with the `mod_security` or `mod_qos` (see section "[Http\(s\)Listener - Request Limitations](#)") module, is part of the distribution. These rules implement a black-list of bad request lines patterns, which can normally be blocked. See the sample configuration files for details.

4.29.1.1 White-List

A Request white-list may be implemented using the `QS_Deny*` directives. The `qsfilter2` utility may be used to generate request white-list rules. See the usage text of the `qsfilter2` utility about further information of automated rule generation.

4.29.2 Header Validation

The header validator is used to enforce RFC compliance of incoming and outgoing HTTP headers. A standard rule set is included in the delivery. It is recommended to activate the standard rule set. See also [RF_SrvReqHdrValidate](#) and corresponding directives.

4.29.3 URL Encryption

URL encryption hides the internal hierarchy of the application by encrypting the request-URI sent to the client. URL encryption consists of two main functions:

1. Encrypts any link in the body data send to the client.
2. Decrypts the request-URI send by the client.

The encryption can be applied to the "path" and the "query" part of an HTTP URL:
<http://<host>:<port>/<path>?<query>#<fragment>>

4.29.3.1 Characteristics

- URL encryption is controlled either by configuration within SRM or controlled by the application. Section "[SRM - Request Filter Directives](#)" outlines the list of all control directives in the SRM. The application can activate different kinds of URL encoding by use of specific reponse headers. The following tables shows the specification of control headers.

Please note that control headers from back-ends override any local configuration at SRM.

Type	Specification
Path encoding	<p>Header name: <code>HspUE_EncPath</code></p> <p>Value: "on" activates encoding of the path within any URL, "off" deactivates encoding of the path within any URL</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HspUE_EncPath: "on" "off"</code></p>
Query encoding	<p>Header name: <code>HspUE_EncQuery</code></p> <p>Values: List of query parameter names whose values must be encoded or "*" to encode all query values. "\$" encodes the whole query string (including the query parameter names).</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HspUE_EncQuery: "*" "\$" <name> * (SPACE <name>)</code></p>
Form input field encoding	<p>Header name: <code>HspUE_EncQuery_INPUT</code></p> <p>Values: List of form input node names whose values must be encoded.</p> <p>Syntax: <code>HspUE_EncQuery: <name> * (SPACE <name>)</code></p>



- encryption:
 - The URL is escaped (characters not allowed within a URL such as spaces or umlauts) and transformed to an absolute path according to the URL of the current request.
 - The URL is DES3 encrypted and Base64 encoded. The key for the encryption is generated using the string defined by [RF_UE_PassPhrase](#) (to be defined in the configuration of the HttpListener/HttpsListener). The encrypted URL remain valid as long as the pass phrase string retains the same. URL generated by HSP instances using the same pass phrase are interchangeable. This allows the definition of encrypted URLs on third party web server and let a customer to bookmark a page.
Exception: encryption of the query string can be locked to the users session using the [RF_UE_LockSessionIdQuery](#) directive.
 - URL encryption detects and encrypts URLs within HTML pages and the HTTP location header. Persistent cookies sent to the client are not encrypted. The path of these cookies is set to "/" in order to guarantee that the browser resends the cookie. This transformation is automatically performed by the HSP if URL encryption is activated.
 - URL encryption requires HTML/JS/CSS code to be parsed by the HSP. It is sometimes possible, that the HSP is not able to parse the transferred response data correctly due to unexpected code formatting. In such case, the application must be changed in order to provide more simplified code that can be processed by the HSP.
- Decryption:
 - Every request coming from the client as well as the HTTP referer header are decrypted automatically even URL encryption has been disabled for a particular location.

4.29.3.2 Configuration

- Enable "path" encryption:
 - The directive [RF_UE_EncodeUrl](#) is used to enable the encryption of the path.
 - For a location, where [RF_UE_EncodeUrl](#) has been specified, only encrypted requests are allowed. Use the directive [RF_UE_AllowPlainText](#) to allow requests with plain text URL to a location where URL encryption has been enabled or define an exception for particular requests using the [RF_UE_AllowPlainUrl](#) directive. The latter directive disables URL encryption rule checking for path and query portion of the request line).
 - Use the directive [RF_UE_EncodeUrlOff](#) to deactivate the response processing for a particular request URL.
- Enable "query" encryption:
 - Use the directive [RF_UE_EncodeQuery](#) to encrypt the query portion of an URL. Either the whole query string or values of defined parameters names can be encrypted.
 - Incoming requests are automatically checked for valid query encryption if [RF_UE_EncodeQuery](#) has been defined. Use [RF_UE_AllowPlainTextQuery](#) or [RF_UE_AllowPlainUrl](#) to disable query encryption enforcement.
- Content types:
 - Only HTML code, inline JavaScript and CSS data are encrypted by default. Use the directive [RF_UE_ContentTypeToEncode](#) to specify additional content types.
- Actions:
 - A path which could not been decrypted leads usually to a 404 response generated by the Http(s)Listener.
 - Accessing the server with a plain text path is denied (403) by the SRM by default if [RF_UE_EncodeUrl](#) has been specified for the location. The action can be changed to "log" (rule violation is logged but access is granted) or "drop" (the request is denied and the client session (type 0) is dropped).
Use [RF_UE_AllowPlainText](#) or [RF_UE_AllowPlainUrl](#) to define exceptions where nor rules are enforced.



- A query which could not be decrypted is passed to the SRM unchanged where the URL encryption rules enforces the appropriate action similar to a plain text query.
- A plain text query is denied if its name has been specified by [RF_UE_EncodeQuery](#) or even the whole query string must be encrypted. Accessing the server with a plain text query is denied with status code 403 by default. The action can also be changed to "log" or "drop" (see above).

The cookie-check should be disabled when accessed by encrypted URLs (user has bookmarked an encrypted URL):

```
SetEnvIf HspUC_ReceivedUriEncrypted "yes" SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck=no
SetEnvIf HspUC_ReceivedQueryEncrypted ".+" SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck=no
```

4.29.3.3 JavaScript

Encryption of URLs within JavaScripts may require additional configuration using the directives [RF_UE_JSFunction](#), [RF_UE_JSVariable](#), and [RF_UE_JSCharset](#), see table "[Http\(s\)Listener - Request/Response Filter Directives](#)".

Limitations:

- JavaScript within HTML code should use HTML comments:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
var str = "url";
//--> </script>
```

- Nested variable assignments and functions calls are limited, e.g. when assigning values to a variable using a function call, the remaining values after the function are ignored by the JavaScript parser.

Example:

```
var str= "/url" + getIt("/sub") + "/index.html";
      ^
```

- Automatic pattern detection using the [RF_UE_JSCharset](#) directive may be used to detect URL's within Java Scripts without any detailed definitions using the [RF_UE_JSFunction](#) and [RF_UE_JSVariable](#) directives. The [RF_UE_JSCharset](#) pattern defines a path and any query portion should be included to the URL string at the server side. String concatenation at the client side should be avoided.

Example which may be processed:

```
var ref = "/auth/login?cmd=logout&user=a_123";
```

Bad example which must be avoided:

```
var id = "a_123";
var ref = "/auth/login?cmd=logout" + "&user=" + id;
```



4.29.4 HTML Form Validation

The form validator in the SRM parses HTML pages for form data and stores the form items (action, name, input) in the client session. The SRM validates incoming requests (POST and GET) using the form data available in the client session and the rules defined in the configuration file of the SRM. Enable and configure HTML form validation using the directives `RF_Form*` described in table "SRM - Request Filter Directives" and further below. See also the location `"/webapp/sample/FormValidation"` in `[HSP_TEMPL]` for an example configuration.

You may use the `fvalidator2` tool to generate rules for your application based on entries in the error or audit (`RF_FormAuditLog` directive) log file. More information about how to use the `fvalidator2` utility further below.

Form validation requires HTML code which may be parsed by the SES. It is sometimes possible, that the SES is not able to parse the transferred response data correctly due unexpected code formatting. In such case, the application must either be changed in order to provide more simplified code in order to be correctly processed by the SES or you should use static white-list filtering only, see section "Static White-Lists".

4.29.4.1 HTML Form Validation in more Detail: Response/Request Processing and Configuration of Types and Parameters

In this subsection the algorithms used to parse HTTP HTML Responses for form data and to validate parameters in following HTTP Requests are described in more detail, along with information how to configure types and parameters for validation.

Usage of the following directives is described here:

- [RF_FormTypeDef](#)
- [RF_FormParamType](#)
- [RF_FormParamException](#)

The first important detail to note is that not only form data is parsed in responses, but also static URIs with query parameters as well as redirect location headers. They are internally processed as if they were forms with hidden fields. URIs are parsed in the tag/attribute combinations listed in the table below:

Table 66: Tags/attributes mapped to forms in form validation

tag	attributes
a	href
img	src, longdesc, usemap
link	href
script	src, for
area	href
input	src, usemap
frame	src, longdesc
iframe	src, longdesc
object	classid, codebase, data, usemap
q	cite
blockquote	cite
ins	cite
del	cite
head	profile
body	background
applet	codebase



The following types come with predefined regular expressions, i.e. with implicit [RF_FormTypeDef](#) definitions:

Table 67: Predefined types in form validation

type	regex
text	<code>^[[:print:]]*\$</code>
password	<code>^[[:print:]]*\$</code>
file	<code>^[[:print:]]*\$</code>
hidden	<i>immutable</i>
submit	<i>immutable</i>
radio	<i>immutable</i>
checkbox	<i>immutable</i>
select	<i>immutable</i>
readonly	<i>immutable</i>

Immutable means that the parameter must be sent in the request exactly as it was in the form. Since query parameters are translated on-the-fly to hidden fields, they are readonly by default. For type select, all selectable values are allowed. The type readonly is created on-the-fly for all `<input>` elements that have the readonly tag set.

All these default type definitions can be overridden with an explicit [RF_FormTypeDef](#). Note: The readonly type value is ignored if it is an empty string, only a non-empty string will have an effect.

Besides `<input>` tags, also `<button>` and `<textarea>` tags are parsed.

The parameter name is taken from the following attributes, with the ones listed earlier having precedence (which mirrors essentially how web browsers treat the matter):

- name
- id
- class

Form validation of a parameter name and value proceeds essentially in two steps:

- Checks if there is a "static" rule defined by [RF_FormParamException](#) that matches name and value.
- If not, iterates through all forms and the parameters within for a matching "dynamic" rule defined by [RF_FormParamType](#).

(If a rule does not match in the second case in a form, the form is removed from the internal list of forms and only if after processing all parameters there is still at least one form left, that thus matched all parameters, validation of the request is ok.)

Within static and dynamic checks, first rules with explicitly given parameter names are checked, then rules with a regex for the parameter name.

One Exception in the validation process are submitted binary data ex. in Multipart file upload. The binary data itself will not be validated, however the submitted content type will be checked ex. `application/pdf`.

An according type definition must be specified in the configuration. To avoid accepting malicious files the content should be send to a AntiVirus Scanner via ICAP (see section ["ICAP Request and Response Modification"](#)).

When configuring rules for a location, it may often be good to proceed as follows:

- Identify the different types of parameters in forms and queries and determine allowed values, possibly with the help of the *fvfilter2* tool.
- Define types using [RF_FormTypeDef](#) and assign them explicitly to parameter names where necessary with [RF_FormParamType](#)
- Define exceptions where necessary with [RF_FormParamException](#)



4.29.4.2 HTML Form Validation in more Detail: The `fvfilter2` Tool

The `fvfilter2` tool merges existing form validation configuration and log entries into new form validation configuration directives, i.e. it learns from requests processed by the SES.

Essentially the tool can handle only ranges of characters that repeat for a certain number of times, i.e. regexes like `"^[a-zA-Z\\-\\x99]{0,20}$"`. In other words, there are two variable elements, the range of characters between the `[]` and the maximal length of the parameter.

First the tool reads the configuration and remembers these ranges and maximal lengths in a local data structure. If a configured regex does not contain a range, the starting point is an empty range.

Then the tool processes log entries. If a parameter matches already the regex so far, nothing is done. Otherwise, for each character of the parameter, the tool checks if the character is contained in the range. If not, it adds the character or a set of characters to the range. And it updates the maximal length if the parameter is longer than allowed so far.

Characters are processed as follows:

- Letters: a-zA-Z
- Numbers: 0-9
- Characters `< \x20` (space) or `> \x7e: \xnn`
- Other characters: character, escaped with backslash (`\`) where necessary

The following ranges are left intact if contained in the range (they are available as predefined ranges in the SES GUI):

- `\x20-\x2f`: characters between space (inclusive) and `0` (exclusive)
- `\x3a-\x40`: characters between `9` and `A` (both exclusive)
- `\x5b-\x60`: characters between `Z` and `a` (both exclusive)
- `\x7b-\x7e`: characters between `z` (exclusive) and `~` (inclusive)

Finally, per location form validation directives are generated and printed out. For parameters that are contained in a form (see previous subsection for exact details), `RF_FormTypeDef` and `RF_FormParamType` directives are created, with the type name equal to the parameter name. For parameters that are not contained in a form, `RF_FormParamException` directives are created.

4.29.5 Static White-Lists

Static white-lists may be generated for request lines (see section "[White-List](#)") and body data. Body data validation is enabled using the `QS_DenyQueryBody` directive. White-list rules may be generated using the `qsfilter2` utility. The necessary data to build the rules may be gathered using the audit facility for white-list generation. This is a special access log which contains request lines and body data.

```
CustomLog /opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/audit %{qos-path}n%{qos-query}n
```

The `qsfilter2` utility generates the necessary commands to implement the rules (you may want to filter the audit file for a specify URL before processing the data).

```
qsfilter2 -i /opt/usp/hsp/srm/logs/audit -o
```

See the usage text of the `qsfilter2` utility about information of automated rule generation.



4.29.6 SOAP/XML Validation

Validation of SOAP messages operates basically on two levels:

- Validation of the XML used to represent the message. This level of validation can generally be applied to any XML messages.
- Validation of the SOAP message itself. This includes comparison of the message to a WSDL and enforcing restrictions on which methods to call for which locations and with which authorization.

High-level feature list:

- Validation of HTTP request and/or response body.
- Validation of multi-part messages, with optional exclusion of parts with given names.
- SOAP 1.1 and 1.2.
- Supports the most common WSDL styles: rpc style and (wrapped) document style.
- WSDL and XSD files locally configured.
- XML validation.
- SOAP method parameter name check resp. full parameter check via schema info in WSDL and referenced XSDs for document style.
- SOAP method restriction to location and/or authorization.

4.29.6.1 XML Validation

Trusted XSD schemas are defined per virtual server with [RF_SF_TrustedSchema](#).

Validation is activated for a location with [RF_SF_SoapValidator](#) (for request) resp. with [RF_SF_SoapValidatorResponse](#).

The maximal level of recursion of XML tags can be limited in order to prevent Denial of Service attacks, with [RF_SF_MaxRecursionLevel](#).

For XML messages that contain tags without an explicitly indicated namespace, a list of possible XSD's to apply can be indicated per location using [RF_SF_NoNsLocFile](#).

For multi-part messages, individual parts can be excluded from validation by configuring their name with [RF_SF_ExclContentDisp](#).

4.29.6.2 SOAP Validation

The SOAP version can be defined per location with [RF_SF_SoapVersion](#).

Schema files are again configured with [RF_SF_TrustedSchema](#).

SOAP applications are defined per virtual server, and bound to a WSDL file in the file system, using [RF_SF_DefineApplication](#).

If [RF_SF_ReqParameterNameValidation](#) is used, method parameter names in the SOAP message are compared to parameter names in the WSDL.

SOAP methods can be limited to a given authorization identifier (az) using [AC_AllowSoapMethod](#) and/or to a given location using [RF_SF_AllowService](#).



4.30 ICAP Request and Response Modification

ICAP is a protocol very similar to HTTP that serves to modify HTTP requests and HTTP responses, and is defined in RFC 3507. The module `mod_icap` supports both ICAP REQMOD and RESPMOD requests.

4.30.1 Architecture

The ICAP module is available in the `Http(s)Listener` and the SRM. The following description of the module describes a setup using `mod_icap` within the `Http(s)Listener`, see figure below. Using `mod_icap` on an Argus system or on the USP Secure Entry Server® appliance requires the operation of the module within the SRM in order to communicate to the ICAP server via the internal or administrative interface.

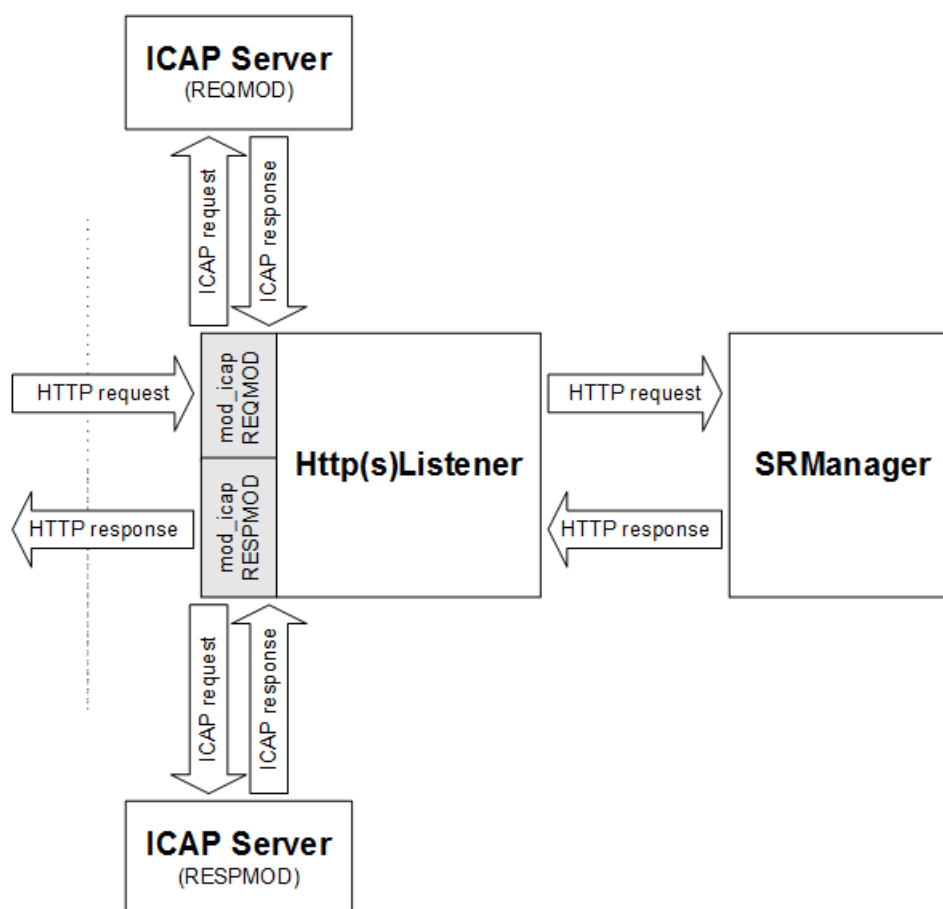


Figure 4: Architecture of ICAP Module

The servers for ICAP REQMOD and RESPMOD can be configured separately and may thus, of course, also be the same.

Since ICAP is often a rather expensive operation, care has been taken to make configuration of which requests to consider as flexible as possible.

The ICAP client (i.e. `mod_icap`) does in general not keep a full copy of the HTTP body data after sending it to the ICAP server, it only caches a potential preview. Thus in the case where no modifications were necessary and still all body data was sent (not just a preview), the ICAP server is obligated - as specified in the ICAP RFC - to send back full body data.



4.30.2 Features and Limitations in Detail

- ICAP (RFC 3507) REQMOD and RESPMOD requests supported and separately configurable.
- Flexible activation of ICAP callouts and flexible selection of responses by Env.
- SSL to ICAP server, with or without client authentication.
- Failover of ICAP servers (multiple servers with exactly the same function).
- No chaining of ICAP servers (multiple ICAP servers applied sequentially to the same HTTP request/response).
- No "204 No Modifications Needed" allowed outside of previews, i.e. the "Allow: 204" header is never sent (see architecture).

4.31 Citrix / ICA Protocol Gateway

The ICA Protocol Gateway enforces strong authentication for Citrix Metaframe applications.

It gets and stores the ticket from the launch.ica file which is downloaded by the Citrix client when choosing an application. The subsequent ICA stream via SES implements protocol detection which enforces only ICA protocol and verifies the authentication ticket.

4.31.1 Supported Citrix Versions

The Citrix integration is tested with the following components and versions:

- Presentation Server 4.5 or Xenapp5
- Webinterface Version 5.0
- Citrix Secure Gateway 3.1

4.31.2 Architecture

Both HttpsListener and SRM must be configured for ICA protocol. A generic SSL gateway streams the ICA protocol from/to the Citrix server. The ICA protocol gateway is activated within the SRM only.

The ICA protocol enforcement module implements two tasks:

- It makes sure that only ICA protocol is used over the SSL link
- It verifies that the ICA streams carries a valid ticket.

The SSL connections gets closed if one of these verification fails.

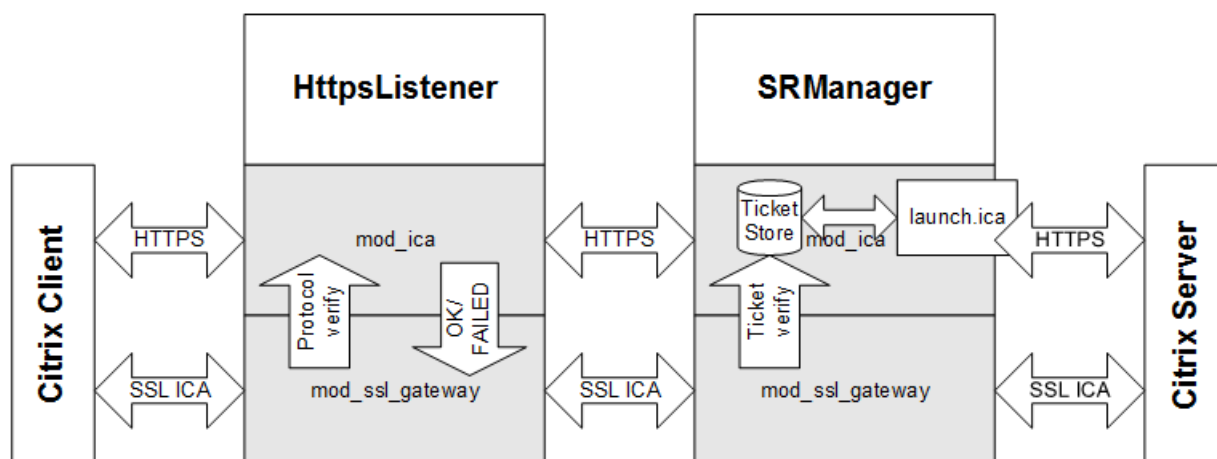


Figure 5: Architecture of ICA Module

4.31.3 Features and Limitations in Detail

- Timeout for connect and for the connection are separately configurable.
- Uses a separate ICA authentication ticket store. One ticket store instance is used for all virtual servers.
- Server certificate check is configurable.
- Ticket name within the launch.ica can be defined.
- An SSL stream is defined on a per virtual host basis.

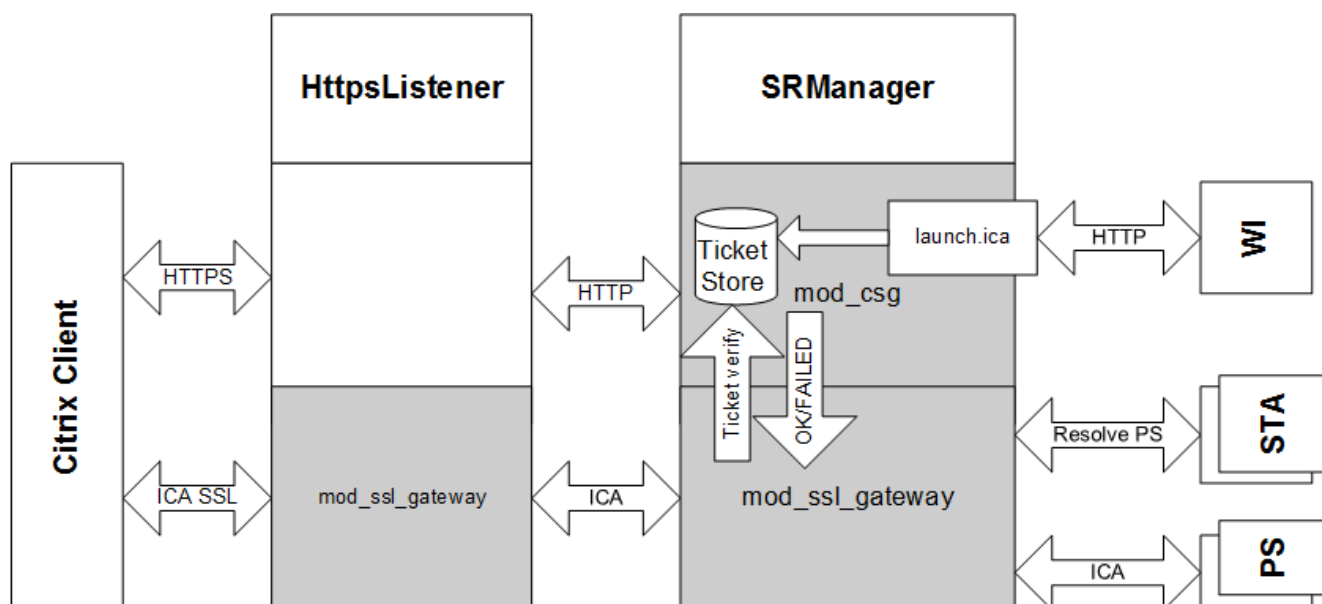
4.31.4 Ticket Store

In order that the ticket store can store all authentication tickets, the size of the used shared memory must be big enough. One ticket has a size of about 100 Bytes. Attention has to be taken, that there is only one ticket store for all ICA enabled virtual hosts. We propose to set the store size to 1MB (space for approximately concurrent 10'000 tickets).

4.32 Citrix Secure Gateway Replacment

The CSG Gateway enforces strong authentication for Citrix Metaframe applications.

It gets and stores the ticket from the launch.ica file which is downloaded by the Citrix client when choosing an application. The subsequent ICA stream via SES implements a Citrix Secure Gateway which verifies the authentication ticket and forwards the ICA stream to the corresponding Citrix Presentation Server.



4.33 Outlook Anywhere for Windows - OAW

This section describes how to setup the SES as a drop in replacement for the ISA Server in order to use it for Outlook Anywhere. The network setup as depicted below will be used for the description following.

4.33.1 Exchange Setup

On the exchange side you have to make sure, that the **External Hostname** is pointing to the right address, i.e. to your SES. Open the **Exchange Management Shell** and execute the following command:

```
[PS] Get-OutlookAnywhere | fl ExternalHostname
ExternalHostname:          www.example.com
```

The reported URL has to match with the WAN Hostname of your SES Appliance.

4.33.2 SES Setup

Every Outlook client will use two concurrent connections, one for receiving (RPC_IN_DATA) and one for sending (RPC_OUT_DATA) data. This has direct influence to your SES sizing. The number of concurrent Outlook clients is calculated as follows:

$$\max(\text{OAWClients}) = \frac{\text{MaxClients} \times \text{HSP_KeepaliveTimeoutShortThreshold}}{100 \times 2}$$

Once you have reached this maximum, all new connection will have a KeepAlive of at most 3 seconds. This will not have much of an impact on browser. Outlook on the other hand will start to complain that the connection to the server is lost and that it has to reconnect again.

This being said let's start with the appliance configuration:

- Log into the appliance with administrative rights
- Select **Configuration** and then **Base Configuration**
- Choose the **expert** Mode and make sure that the **Allowed Response Headers** contain:



- MS-Server-ActiveSync
- MS-ASProtocolVersions
- MS-ASProtocolCommands
- MS-ASProtocolRevisions
- X-MS-MV-Public
- X-OWA-EventResult
- X-UA-Compatible
- In the Virtual Hosts section, select expert for the appropriate host
- Make sure that the **Persistent cookies** contain
 - ^SLSLanguage\$
 - ^SLSpers\$
 - ^UserContext\$
 - ^MstrPgLd2\$
 - ^ecpCookieTest\$
 - ^msExchEcpCanary\$
- In the Locations section, select **add new location**
 - In the **URL** field enter **/rpc** , choose the item **generic** in the drop down list and press the **add** button
- In the **Protocol availability** section, choose **HTTPS**
- In the **Target** server section, you have to choose either the CAS server (use case A) directly or the NLB (use case B) depending on your back-end setup.
- In the **Access area** section, select **Public** from the drop-down list
- Set the **Timeout** to **1800 seconds**
- Choose the **expert** mode
- Disable **Enhanced Dos**
- In the **HTTPS** section you can choose if you want to do **SSL offloading**.
- In the **Allowed methods** section, choose the following checkboxes
 - GET
 - POST
 - PUT
 - RPC_IN_DATA
 - RPC_OUT_DATA
- Enable **Allow 401 response**
- Choose the **Filter** tab
- Set **Max. upload** to **2g**
- In the **Request filter pattern blacklist** section,
 - Set **Action on pattern** match on **log**



- **Disable Request body (POST) data filtering**
- In the **Allowed request header** section, set the following headers
 - +Host
 - +Depth
 - +allow-rename
 - +notification-type
 - +depth
 - +subscription-id
 - +apply-to-redirect-ref
 - +destination
 - +ordered
 - +subscription-lifetime
 - +brief
 - +if
 - +overwrite
 - +timeout
 - +call-back
 - +label
 - +position
 - +transaction
 - +dasl
 - +lock-token
 - +redirect-ref
 - +dav
 - +notification-delay
 - +status-uri
 - +translate
 - +front-end-https
 - +X-MS-PolicyKey
 - +MS-ASProtocolVersion

Now **save** , **commit** and **deploy** this configuration and you are done.

4.33.3 Outlook 2010 Setup

Make sure that you have setup Outlook correctly for intranet usage and the initial profile setup on the client machine has run properly. Once the initial setup is done you have to proceed as follows:

- Start Outlook
- From the **File** tab, select **Info**
- Click the **Account Settings** pull-down menu and then select **Account Settings**
- Double-click on the words **Microsoft Exchange Server**



- Click the **More Settings** button
- Select the **Connection** tab
- In the Outlook Anywhere section, enable Connect to **Microsoft Exchange using HTTP** .
- Click the **Exchange Proxy Settings** button
- Enter the proxy server name `www.example.com`
- Select Only connection to proxy server that have this principal name in their certificate:
msstd:www.example.com
- Disable the following checkboxes
 - **On fast networks, connect using HTTP first, then connect using TCP/IP**
 - **On slow networks, connect using HTTP first, then connect using TCP/IP**
- In the Proxy authentication settings section, select **NTLM Authentication**

4.33.4 Features and Limitations in Detail

- Timeout for connect and for the connection are separately configurable.
- Uses a separate ICA authentication ticket store. One ticket store instance is used for all virtual servers.
- Ticket name with in the `launch.ica` can be defined.
- An SSL stream is defined on a per virtual host basis.
- Presentation Server resolving support
- Multi Secure Ticket Authority server support

4.33.5 Ticket Store

In order that the ticket store can store all authentication tickets, the size of the used shared memory must be big enough. One ticket has a size of about 100 Bytes. Attention has to be taken, that there is only one ticket store for all ICA enabled virtual hosts. We propose to set the store size to 1MB (space for approximately concurrent 10'000 tickets).

4.34 HTTP/2 Support

This section describes how to setup the HSP listener to allow web clients to use HTTP/2 as communication protocol.

By default, the HTTP/2 protocol is not enabled in the HSP. HTTP/2 must be enabled via the Protocols directive, either for all virtual hosts (global scope) or for single virtual hosts only.

One useful configuration scheme is

```
<VirtualHost ...>
  SSLEngine on
  Protocols h2 http/1.1

  H2SerializeHeaders on
</VirtualHost>
```



which allows HTTP/2 negotiation via TLS ALPN in a secure virtual host. For web clients which do not negotiate HTTP/2 the fall-back to "http/1.1" takes place. Please note that protocols specified in the global scope are inherited for virtual hosts only if the virtual host has no own Protocols directive. And Protocols directives in virtual hosts replace any such directive in the base server. In addition, http/1.1 is always the fallback protocol if clients do not present h2 support - even though if it is not explicitly set via Protocols.

Although none of the major browsers currently supports it, the HTTP/2 protocol provides also non-encrypted communication (h2c).

In addition, the directive H2SerializeHeaders should be set to "on" for internal de-multiplexing of h2 streams into HTTP/1.1 requests that are finally passed to back-end servers.

HTTP/2 has some special requirements regarding TLS (SSL). One of them is, that no cipher from a specified black list may be used. Change mod_http2's [\[H2ModernTLSOnly\]](#) directive to control, whether to enforce compliance to these requirements or not. Be furthermore aware, that most clients enforce the usage of non-blacklisted ciphers with HTTP/2, and therefore may refuse any connection to HSP if blacklisted ciphers are configured.

4.34.1 Limitations and restrictions when using HTTP/2

4.34.1.1 Multiple Hosts and Misdirected Requests

For virtual hosts using the the same TLS certificate (with wildcard name or having several alternate names) it must be ensured that all have exactly the same SSL configuration: same protocol, same ciphers and same settings for client verification.

The reason is that many browsers using HTTP/2 try to reuse connections for such hosts. Thus, multiple requests for multiple virtual hosts might be on the same TLS connection. That makes renegotiation impossible, in face the HTTP/2 standard forbids it.

So if such virtual hosts do not have the same SSL configuration, Apache httpd will detect it and return a special response code, 421 Misdirected Request, to the client.

4.34.1.2 Unsupported modules

Currently, there are some modules and functionalities which are not supported to be used in conjunction with HTTP/2

1. ICAP REQMOD and RESPMOD in HSP listener (mod_icap)
2. the SOAP/XML validation in HSP listener (mod_soap_filter)
3. the usage of legacy renegotiation in HSP listener (HSP_SSLAllowLegacyRenegotiation)
4. the suppression of 100-continue reaction in HSP listener and in SRM (HGW_Strict100Continue)
5. the immediate flushing of response data in HSP listener (HGW_ResponseBodyImmediateFlush)
6. the non-blocking response mode in HSP listener (HGW_ResponseBodyNonBlocking)
7. the non-blocking request mode in HSP listener (HGW_RequestBodyNonBlocking)
8. the chunked-buffering mode in HSP listener (HGW_ChunkedBuffering)

4.35 Basic Web Socket Support

This section describes how to setup HSP to allow web clients to connect to a single or several load balanced web socket back-end servers.

There are two configuration scenarios:

1. Support for web socket connections to a [single web socket back-end server](#)
2. Support for web socket connections to [several load balanced web socket back-end servers](#)



4.35.1 Configuration Scenario 1: single web socket back-end server

In HTL or HTS, or both, you have to configure a location supporting web sockets within an existing virtual host or create a new virtual host if appropriate.

4.35.1.1 HTL/HTS server settings

In the following example, we add a location `/ws` to an existing virtual host

```
<Location /ws>
  SetHandler default
  HGW_Disable
  ProxyPass ws://127.0.0.1:<PORT-OF-SRM>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
  ProxyPassReverse ws://127.0.0.1:<PORT-OF-SRM>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>

  # set to "on" for HTS, "off" for HTL
  RequestHeader set HTTPS <off|on>
</Location>
```

where `<PORT-OF-SRM>` corresponds to the listener port on which SRM accepts web socket connections for tunneling to the back-end server.

Note

By means of the HTTPS header the Listener communicates to SRM whether the frontend connection is secure or not; based on this information SRM can decide upon connection upgrade requests whether the "_S" suffix in the session cookie-name must be expected or not. Thus, for HTS the header "HTTPS: on" must be sent to SRM, whereas HTL must send "HTTPS: off". Please set "RequestHeader set HTTPS on" for HTS and "RequestHeader set HTTPS off" for HTL.

Note

You might leave `/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>` empty if no request path translation is required.

4.35.1.2 SRM server settings

On SRM, a corresponding location must be configured in order to accept web socket connections from HTS (or HTL) and to setup a web socket tunnel to the back-end server.

In the following example, we add a location `/ws` to an existing virtual host

```
SetEnvIf Request_URI "^/ws($|/)" SE_ExtCookie_CookieCheck=no

<Location /ws>
  SetHandler default
  HGW_Disable
  ProxyPass ws://<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER>:<PORT-OF-TARGET- ↵
    WEBSOCKET-SERVER>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
  ProxyPassReverse ws://<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER>:<PORT-OF-TARGET- ↵
    WEBSOCKET-SERVER>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
</Location>
```



Note

Replace `<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER>` and `<PORT-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER>` with the name (or IP) and port of the corresponding back-end server to which the web socket connection should be tunneled. For path translation and TLS support the same is true for SRM as mentioned above for HTL/HTS. Please note the deactivation of the Cookie check mechanism for the request URI `/ws` (on virtual host basis). This is important because a redirection triggered by Cookie Check might disrupt WebSocket handshakes upon connection upgrades.

4.35.1.3 Accessing the web socket back-end server

Assuming your virtual host is accessible under `ws.company.com`, the web socket back-end is now reachable under the URL `ws://ws.company.com/ws`

4.35.2 Configuration Scenario 2: several load balanced web socket back-end servers

As in the [configuration scenario 1](#), we add a location `/ws` to an existing virtual host in the HTL, HTS or both server configurations:

```
<Location /ws>
  SetHandler default
  HGW_Disable
  ProxyPass ws://127.0.0.1:<PORT-OF-SRM>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
  ProxyPassReverse ws://127.0.0.1:<PORT-OF-SRM>/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
</Location>
```

Note

You might leave `<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>` empty if no request path translation is required.

4.35.2.1 SRM server settings

In the SRM configuration, besides the web socket location also the load balancing settings are needed. In the following example, we define a location whose web socket load is balanced among three back-end servers.

```
<Location /ws>
  SetHandler default
  HGW_Disable
  ProxyPass balancer://ws_balancer_1/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
  ProxyPassReverse balancer://ws_balancer_1/<PATH-TO-SERVICE-TRANSLATED>
</Location>
```

Please note that keyword `balancer://` states that load balancing should be enabled whereas `ws_balancer_1` defines the ID of the load balancer to be used.

Finally, we add the settings of the load balancer in the scope of the corresponding virtual host. In the following we define three back-end servers stated by placeholders where `<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-n>` and `<PORT-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-n>` should be replaced with the name/IP (or with the port, respectively) of the `n`th back-end server.

```
#SSLProxyEngine on
<Proxy balancer://ws_balancer_1>
  BalancerMember ws://<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-1>:<PORT-OF-TARGET- ←
    WEBSOCKET-SERVER-1> loadfactor=1
```



```
BalancerMember ws://<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-2>:<PORT-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-2> loadfactor=1  
BalancerMember ws://<NAME-OR-IP-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-3>:<PORT-OF-TARGET-WEBSOCKET-SERVER-3> loadfactor=1  
ProxySet lbmethod=byrequests  
</Proxy>
```

Note

If the connection to the web socket back-end servers should be TLS enabled, replace `ws://` by `wss://` and uncomment `SSLProxyEngine on` in the configuration snippet above.

The `loadfactor` parameter specifies how much of a load a particular member carries. If you want each member to carry the same load, set the numbers equal to each other (as in the example above). If, however, you want one member to work three times harder than the other, set the loadfactors to 3 and 1.

Use the `lbmethod` parameter of the `ProxySet` directive to specify the load balancing algorithm. The possible values are as follows:

- `byrequests` which performs weighted request counting. This is the default value.
- `bytraffic` which performs weighted traffic byte count balancing
- `bybusyness` which performs pending request balancing.

4.35.3 Basic Web Socket Security Features

So far, HSP supports the following web socket security features:

- Limitation of connections used for web sockets. Connection upgrades to web sockets will be refused with an *Internal Server Error 500* if the number of open web sockets have reached the configured limit. Limit is the percentage (1..100) of the total available server connections. See directive [HSP_WebSocketLoadLimit](#) for more details.
- Timeout setting for idle web socket connections. Imposes a maximum amount of time for web socket tunnels to be left open while idle and forces connections to be closed if the timeout has been reached. Per default, no time-out is set. See directive [ProxyWebsocketIdleTimeout](#) for more details.

4.36 Unblu Co-Browsing

Unblu is a fully browser-based solution that enables real-time collaboration with users by sharing the view of the browser and by enabling interaction. Unblu Co-Browsing can be integrated into HSP by use of the `mod_unblufilter`. This module is part of the HSP's delivery package.

In the following we outline how to setup the `mod_unblufilter` module in HSP. For the setup of the Unblu server readers are referred to the official documentation of Unblu: <https://www.unblu.com/en/docs/latest/>

4.36.1 General information

Unblu requires a "public path" on which the communication with the Unblu server takes place. By default, this path is set to `/unblu`. However, the path can also be adjusted in the configuration properties.

For the integration into HSP this entails that there must exist a corresponding location on HTS as well as on SRM. For the sake of simplicity the default path `/unblu` is assumed to be used.



4.36.2 HTS configuration

If `mod_security` is in place on HTS, it may first be necessary to

- remove file extension restrictions
- and relax unix shell expression detection for the `/unblu` location

on global scope. For example, when using the OWASP Core Rule Set version 3.0.2 the rules with ID `932130` and ID `920440` must be disabled as follows:

HTS global section

```
SecAction "phase:2,nolog,pass,id:200000,\
    ctl:ruleRemoveTargetById=932130;REQUEST_COOKIES:x-unblu-worker-origin"

SecRule REQUEST_FILENAME "@beginsWith /unblu" "phase:2,nolog,pass,id:200001,\
    ctl:ruleRemoveById=920440"
```

Then on virtual host scope of HTS, various Unblu-specific response headers must be allowed using `RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow`.

HTS virtual host section

```
<VirtualHost>
    RF_ServerResponseHeaderAllow x-unblu-auth-loginname \
                                x-unblu-auth-roles \
                                x-unblu-auth-session \
                                x-unblu-auth-session-call-origin \
                                x-unblu-basic-authorization \
                                x-unblu-client \
                                x-unblu-cookie \
                                x-unblu-page \
                                x-unblu-proxy-id \
                                x-unblu-set_cookie \
                                x-unblu-start-time

</VirtualHost>
```

On location scope, first the `X-Forwarded-Host` and `X-Forwarded-Proto` headers must be whitelisted on the root location. On the `/unblu` location, the same response headers as on the virtual host must be allowed. In addition, all request headers with the prefix `Sec-Fetch-` and `sec-ch-` as well as Unblu specific headers must be whitelisted. The maximum POST size is also increased at least to 500 KB.

HTS location section

```
<Location />
    HGW_RequestHeaders %HTS_std +x-forwarded-host +x-forwarded-proto
</Location>

<Location /unblu>
    RF_LocationResponseHeaderAllow x-unblu-auth-roles \
                                   x-unblu-auth-session \
                                   x-unblu-auth-session-call-origin \
                                   x-unblu-basic-authorization \
                                   x-unblu-client \
                                   x-unblu-cookie \
```



```
        x-unblu-page \
        x-unblu-proxy-id \
        x-unblu-set_cookie \
        x-unblu-start-time

    HGW_RequestHeaders Sec-Fetch-* sec-ch-* x-unblu-*
    RC_MaxPostSize 512000
</Location>
```

Note

For file transfers with larger sizes, the setting *RC_MaxPostSize* should be increased even further.

4.36.3 SRM Configuration

In the global section of SRM, the *mod_unblufilter* module must first be loaded with *LoadModule*. After that, the module is configured by setting the URL to the Unblu server or by specifying the "configuration origin".

SRM global section

```
LoadModule unblufilter_module <path to>/mod_unblufilter.so

UnbluModule on
UnbluServerUrl https://<IP address>:<port>
UnbluConfigOrigin remote
UnbluPublicPathPrefix /unblu
UnbluSystemPathPrefix /sys-unblu
UnbluMaxResponseSizeResource 100kb
UnbluMaxResponseSizeInjection 50kb
# default API key, see Unblu Agent Desk under "Manage Accounts -> API Keys"
UnbluApiKey <API key>

<Proxy balancer://unblu-server lbmethod=byrequests stickysession=route>
    BalancerMember http://unbluserver:7080 route=1
</Proxy>
```

The *LoadModule* and the *UnbluServerUrl* settings require adjustments: the path to the shared-object file of the module must be set accordingly and the Unblu server URL must be set to the hostname plus port of the backend collaboration server.

On virtual host scope, the setting *FilterProvider* is used to active *mod_unblufilter* as a filter. And the setting *FilterChain* specifies at which point in the filter chain Unblu is called. In addition, the cookie *x-unblu-device* must be set persistent.

SRM virtual host section

```
<VirtualHost>
    FilterProvider unblufilter unblufilter "%{CONTENT_TYPE} =~ m|.*|"
    FilterChain @unblufilter

    SE_IntCookie_PersistentCookiesMatch ^x-unblu-device$
</VirtualHost>
```

On location scope - same as for HTS - the *X-Forwarded-Host* and *X-Forwarded-Proto* headers must be on the whitelist for the root location. With *RequestHeader set*, the value for *X-Forwarded-Proto* is set to "https", and the value of *X-Forwarded-Host* is set to the name of the virtual host.



Note

If the backend application needs to load additional external resources (like images), the Unblu server needs the information from *X-Forwarded-Host* and *X-Forwarded-Proto* headers in order to correctly load and store these resources.

On the */unblu* location, the same request headers and maximum POST size as in HTS must be allowed. Finally, the Unblu Collaboration Server is defined as the backend to be used.

SRM location section

```
<Location />
  HGW_RequestHeaders %SRM_as_std +x-forwarded-host +x-forwarded-proto
  RequestHeader set X-Forwarded-Proto "https"
  RequestHeader set X-Forwarded-Host "<virtual host name>"
</Location>
```

```
<Location /unblu>
  HGW_Balancer unblu-server
  HGW_RequestHeaders Sec-Fetch-* sec-ch-* x-unblu-*
  RC_MaxPostSize 512000
</Location>
```

4.37 HTTP Analyzer

4.37.1 DBG_TraceLog

mod_analyze may be used to capture the HTTP traffic. It stores the captured data to a separate file. Use the *DBG_TraceLog* directive to specify a separate file for each virtual host.

4.37.2 SetEnvIf

Data capturing is enabled on a per requests level by setting the process environment variable "mod_analyze" using the *SetEnvIf* directive.

Examples:

```
SetEnvIf Remote_Addr 172.17.7.12 mod_analyze
SetEnvIf Request_URI /webapp mod_analyze
```

The traced data includes the request line, request/response header, response status and the request/response body data. Request/response body data is logged automatically if it is recognized as "text" data but you may enforce body logging by setting the environment variable "mod_analyze_body".

4.37.3 loganalyze

The *loganalyze* utility may be used to process/filter the captured data. It's usage text explains also the format of the trace data generated by *mod_analyze*.

4.38 Client Restriction

mod_client_restriction offers a solution to limit the number of requests of a client to a virtual host. The user is identified by the IP address. If this is not possible since all request are coming through a proxy or a load balancer then it is possible to identify the client by a custom header field. The custom header field is specified by the directive *HGW_ClientRestrictionIdentityHeader*.



The clients are limited by their requests they make during the configured time period. Every time the time period elapses the request counter will be reset. If a client reaches the limit within the time limit then the configured action will be triggered (See `HGW_ClientRestrictionMaxRequestRate` for more details.)

If there are clients which must be handled differently or where no restriction should apply it is possible to add exceptions this clients (see `HGW_ClientRestrictionExceptionRequestRate`)

4.39 Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI)

The Adaptive Client Integrator (ACI) analyses requests from the client and response with generated HTTP response depending of the result of the analysis.

4.39.1 Rule Analysis

The evaluation of the rules will run during two phases of the request processing.

The main processing is just before the content is send further to the application server. This can be used for public as well as member or customer locations.

The other evaluation possibility is when the client is redirected to the login service. This is only possible for member or customer locations.

Per default all rules will be analyzed in both phases, but it can be configured within the rules if it should run only in one of it.

4.39.1.1 Analysis order

The order of the analyzed rules are as they are defined within the configuration. The first rule defined will be evaluated first. Inherited rules will be evaluated after the rules defined in the location.

4.39.2 ACI Rule Model

Each rule consists of a rule id, several conditions and response arguments. Conditions are linked using logical AND. The response arguments must contain at least a HTTP return status code.

4.39.2.1 HTTP Response Status 304 Not Modified

Due the limitation of Apache and the recommendations by the [\[RFCHTTP1.1\]](#) it is not possible to add any headers when returning this status.

4.39.2.2 Syntax Definitions

To describe the syntax of the rules, the definitions from [\[RFCHTTP1.1\]](#) are used. All the text typeset in fixed-width font are syntax definitions basing on Augmented BNF as specified in [\[RFCHTTP1.1\]](#).

```
rule = rule_id "if" "(" 1*condition ")" "{" response_argument "}"
```

```
rule_id = "RULE.ID" "=" literal
```

```
condition = ["NOT"] ( "URI" | "METHOD" | c_header | c_env ) c_match
```

```
c_header = "HDR." <string>
```

The string must match the key of the request header.



```
c_env = "ENV." <string>
```

The string must match the key of the environment variable.

```
c_match = ( "=" literal ) | ( "=~" re)
```

```
response_argument = 1*1r_ret *r_hdr [r_lsredirect]
```

```
r_ret = "RC" "=" <http_resp_status_code>
```

Only valid HTTP Response status code are allowed.

```
r_hdr = "HDR." <string> "=" literal_ext
```

The string defines the header key. The id it's value.

```
r_lsredirect = "LS_REDIRECT" "=" ( "ONLY" | "NOT" )
```

This argument defines in which phase the rule is analyzed. If ONLY is set, the rule is only executed when the client is redirected to the login service. If NOT is used the rule is only analyzed during the main processing phase.

```
re = "/" <regex> "/"
```

An extended regular expression. See shell command "man -s 5 regex" for details on extended regular expressions.

```
literal = "/" <string> "/"
```

```
literal_ext = "/" *(literal | variable) "/"
```

```
variable = "$" id "(" ( "urlenc" "(" <string> ")" | <string> ) ")"
```

The id will be replaced by the respective variable, the following variable domains are supported:

Apache

Internal Apache variables, i.e. \$Apache (SERVER_NAME)

Env

Process environment variable which may have been set using the SetEnvIf directive, i.e \$ENV(request_uri)

Var

ACI specific variables

see section "Variable identifiers" for available variables.

When using urlenc the resolved variable value will be URL encoded.

4.39.2.3 Variable identifiers

Table 68: ACI - variable identifiers

Identifier	Description
Apache(HTTP_USER_AGENT)	User-Agent header.
Apache(HTTP_REFERER)	Referer header.
Apache(HTTP_COOKIE)	Cookie header.

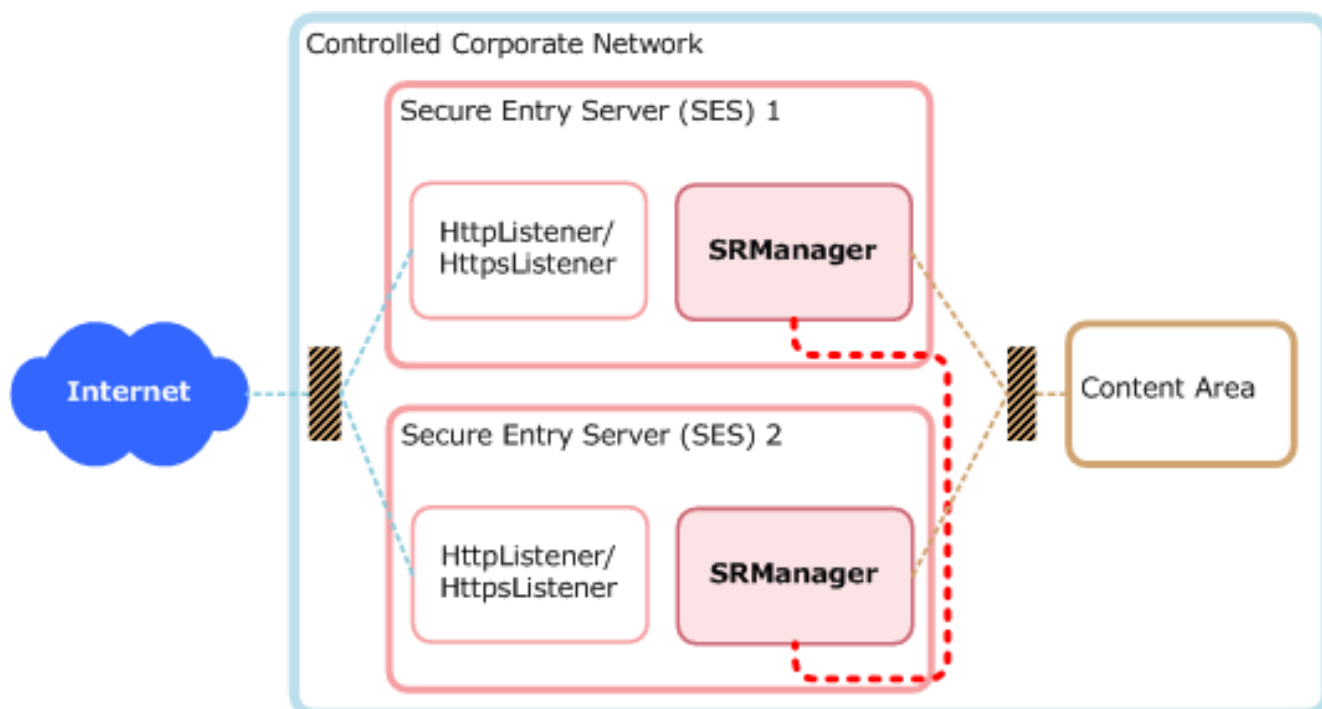


Table 68: (continued)

Identifier	Description
Apache(HTTP_FORWARDED)	Forwarded header.
Apache(HTTP_HOST)	Host header.
Apache(HTTP_PROXY_CONNECTION)	Proxy-Connection header.
Apache(HTTP_ACCEPT)	Accept header.
Apache(REMOTE_ADDR)	Client address
Apache(REMOTE_PORT)	Client ephemeral port
Apache(REMOTE_HOST)	Client host name
Apache(REMOTE_USER)	Client user name
Apache(REMOTE_IDENT)	Client id
Apache(THE_REQUEST)	The hole request line with all queries
Apache(REQUEST_METHOD)	Request method i.e. GET, POST, HEAD, PUT, ...
Apache(REQUEST_URI)	URL without query
Apache(PATH_INFO)	Path information
Apache(QUERY_STRING)	Query string only
Apache(AUTH_TYPE)	Authentication type
Apache(IS_SUBREQ)	Returns string "true" if it is a subrequest else returns "false"
Apache(DOCUMENT_ROOT)	Path of configured document root
Apache(SERVER_ADMIN)	Configured server admin name of given virtual host
Apache(SERVER_NAME)	Configured server name of given virtual host
Apache(SERVER_ADDR)	Configured virtual host IP address.
Apache(SERVER_PORT)	Configured virtual host port.
Apache(SERVER_PROTOCOL)	Protocol i.e. HTTP/1.1, HTTP/1.0, HTTP/0.9
Apache(SERVER_SOFTWARE)	Get servers version number.
Apache(API_VERSION)	Apaches module version number %d:%d i.e. 20051115:30
ENV(<environment-variable>)	Content of specified <environment-variable>
Var(REDIRECT_PAGE)	Depending on the phase in which the rule has matched the variable returns the page to which the access control handler redirects to (Login Service redirect) or, during the main processing phase, the page defined in the access control configuration (AC_LoginPage directive).
Var(AC_LOGIN_PAGE)	The defined access controll loginpage (AC_LoginPage directive)
Var(LISTENER_HOST)	The listener hostname incl. schema the request has entered. Extracted from the "Hsp-ListenerUri" header.

4.40 Session Transfer

If multiple SES instances are running in parallel it is desirable to be able to move a client session from one SES instance to an other instance. The SRM stores the local client session information. For a session transfer each SRM provides configured virtual host that provides an interface to transfer a session. If a SRM requires a session from an other SRM it will request the session from the other SRM via this virtual host.



4.40.1 Prerequisites

The Session Transfer requires a secure network connection between the SRM instances. Therefore each SRM requires a server and a client certificate. In addition to this two certificates it is necessary to have a shared certificate including the private key that is used by all SRM instances to encrypt/decrypt the session credentials.

All the client and server certificates should be signed by one certificate authority to simplify the configuration. But it would be possible to use different authorities.

4.40.2 httpd.conf SRM

The httpd.conf of the SRM requires the following entries within the global section:

```
HSP_HostIdPath <HOSTID_FILE>
SE_TransferHost <HOSTID1> <IP_ADDRESS1>:<PORT1>
SE_TransferHost <HOSTID2> <IP_ADDRESS2>:<PORT2>
...
SE_TransferHost <HOSTIDX> <IP_ADDRESS1>:<PORT1>
SE_TransferSecret <SECRET>
SE_TransferControlFile <FILE>
SE_TransferControlTimeout <TIME>
SE_TransferClientCert CERT=<CLIENT_CERT> PKEY=<CLIENT_PRIVATE_KEY>
AC_HspCredentialPrivateKeyPath <SHARED_PKEY>
AC_HspCredentialCertificatePath <SHARED_CERT>
```

HSP_HostIdPath

This entry provides the path to the hostid file (*HOSTID_FILE*). This file contains the hostid of the current host. This id is used for the client authentication.

**SE_TransferHost**

This entry defines all the SRM instances. Within each SRM all SRM must be specified even him self. *HOSTID?* must be the host id (the same as the *hostid* file provides). *IP_ADDRESS1:PORT* defines the address how to reach the a given SRM. The block with all the *SE_TransferHosts* must be the same on all SRMs.

SE_TransferSecret

This string defines a string that is used to encrypt the session data sent to the client. This value must be the same on all SRM instances.

SE_TransferControlFile

The value of this entry points to a file and the session transfer is only enabled if this file exists otherwise the session transfer is disabled.

SE_TransferControlTimeout

This value defines the timeout how long the session transfer remains active when the *SE_TransferControlFile* is removed.

SE_TransferClientCert

This provides the client certificate including the private key which is used to authenticate the current SRM on a remote SRM.

AC_HspCredentialPrivateKeyPath

This specifies the private key used to encrypt the session information. It is important that all SRM use the same private key.

AC_HspCredentialCertificatePath

This specifies the certificate that belongs to the *AC_HspCredentialPrivateKeyPath*.

In addition to the global configuration a new virtual host configuration is required. This virtual host provides the interface for the session transfer.

```
Listen <<ADMIN_INTERFACE>:6443>
<VirtualHost <ADMIN_INTERFACE>:6443>
  Timeout 300
  Options IncludesNOEXEC
  ServerName SessionTransfer
  SSLEngine on
  SSLVerifyDepth 3
  SSLCipherSuite RC4-SHA:RC4-MD5:AES256-SHA:AES128-SHA:DES-CBC3-SHA:!EXP
  SSLCertificateKeyFile <SERVER_PKEY>
  SSLCertificateFile <SERVER_CERT>
  SSLCACertificateFile <CA_CERT>
  SetHandler session-transfer-interface
  SSLVerifyClient require
  <Location />
    SSLRequireSSL
    SSLRequire %{SSL_CLIENT_S_DN_CN} eq "<HOSTID1>" or %{SSL_CLIENT_S_DN_CN} eq ←
      "<HOSTID2>"
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

<ADMIN_INTERFACE>

Replace with the listening address

<SERVER_PKEY>

The path to the SRM server private key.

**<SERVER_CERT>**

The path to the SRM server certificate.

<CA_CERT>

The path to the file with the certificate authority certificate that is used to verify the clients.

<HOSTIDX>

Add a check for each SRM with their hostid this way only configured SRM clients will be able to fetch a session from a SRM.

4.41 Cross-Site Request Forgery Protection

4.41.1 Overview

This module allows to protect requests against Cross-Site Request Forgery attacks. This is done by implanting a token (random string based on session information) into requests of authenticated sessions. Please note that anonymous (not-authenticated) sessions can't be protected.

SRM can implant the token into:

- HTML forms
- HTML tags with URL attributes
- JavaScript code

The client can send the token as:

- HTTP body parameter
- URL query parameter
- HTTP header

4.41.2 Protection of HTML-Form based POST data

To protect an HTML-Form automatically with the token, the directive [RF_CSRF](#) is used on a Location level:

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>
  <Location /example>
    RF_CSRF on
    RF_CSRF_DisableVerification /example/login
    AC_AccessArea Member
    AC_LoginPae /example/login
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

With the above configuration, SRM rewrites all HTML responses from the application server to the client, adding to each POST-Form a hidden field containing the token. When the client submits the form, the token parameter must be present in order for the SRM to accept the request.

This applies to the location `"/example"` (and sublocations) but is disabled for the login location `"/example/login"` with [RF_CSRF_DisableVerification](#).

As an example, have a look at the following HTML form:



```
<form>
  <input name="username" value="enter your username" />
  <input name="password" value="enter your password" />
  <input type="submit" label="login" action="do_login()" />
</form>
```

This is extended with the token and reaches the client like this:

```
<form>
  <input name="username" value="enter your username" />
  <input name="password" value="enter your password" />
  <input type="hidden" name="CSRF_TOKEN" value="Idb2D5Jzrc1UZg_n5a6wQOs-1Fef" />
  <input type="submit" label="login" action="do_login()" />
</form>
```

Note

There are a lot of directives available for fine tuning of various aspects like the token name, the response code on failure, protected content-types and so on. Have a look at the related documentation in the [Cross-Site Request Forgery \(CSRF\) directives table](#) for more details.

4.41.3 Protection of HTML-Query-Parameter data

Usually is not necessary to protect GET request as they should not accomplish critical actions; nevertheless SRM offers such a mechanism in case a backend application does not respect this definition.

This is achieved by configuring a regular expression with [RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex](#) which should match the URL to protect:

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>
  <Location />
    RF_CSRF on
    RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex ^.*$
    AC_AccessArea Member
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

This will instruct SRM to extend each URL (because of the `^.*$` regex) in the server response with a CSRF-Token as a query parameter. Requests to a URL matching the regex will only be accepted if this query parameter is present.

For Example, inside an HTML document, the following link tag:

```
<a href=https://www.example.com/index.html>index</a>
```

is extended and reaches the client like this:

```
<a href=https://www.example.com/index.html?CSRF_TOKEN=
  rnOyMnjJpUpDMh6PhvKDkselcits2GL0>index</a>
```

Note

There are a lot of directives available for fine tuning of various aspects like the token name, the response code on failure, protected content-types and so on. Have a look at the related documentation in the [Cross-Site Request Forgery \(CSRF\) directives table](#) for more details.



4.41.4 Protection of JavaScript generated requests

4.41.4.1 Overview

A special challenge when it comes to Cross-Site Request Forgery prevention are dynamically generated requests via JavaScript. Because the requests are dynamically created on the client using the XMLHttpRequest object, the server has no possibility to inject a token into these requests. Luckily JavaScript allows to overwrite an objects prototype functions, what can be used to manipulate requests in a general manner.

This allows the following workflow:

- SRM injects a JavaScript into each delivered HTML-page.
- The JavaScript is responsible to set a certain HTTP-Header.
- SRM only accepts the request when this header is present, and its value is correct.

4.41.4.2 Configuration and default values

To configure such a setup, SRM offers two directives:

- [RF_CSRF_Header](#):
 - enables the feature.
 - optionally defines a custom header name, where SRM will look for the token. If no name is defined the default "X-CSRF-Token" will be used.
- [RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript](#)
 - defines the script to be injected into responses.
 - can be a file-path to a script file or an inline definition.
 - is optionally, if not defined the default script will be injected.

Additionally to the configured script with `RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript`, SRM **always** injects the following JavaScript section:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
function HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin(url) {
    var pageLocation = window.location;
    var parser = document.createElement('a');
    parser.href = url;

    function getDefaultPort(prot) {
        return {"http:":"80", "https:":"443"}[prot];
    }

    function portOf(loc) {
        return loc.port || getDefaultPort(loc.protocol);
    }

    return !((parser.protocol && (parser.protocol === pageLocation.protocol)) &&
        (parser.hostname && (parser.hostname === pageLocation.host)) &&
        (parser.hostname && (portOf(parser) === portOf(pageLocation))));
}

```



```
var HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName = <header_name>;
var HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue = <value_of_the_token>;
ADDITIONAL JAVA SCRIPT IS INSERTED HERE
//-->
</script>
```

This gives the developer of the injected JavaScript the following possibilities:

- Set the correct header name via the variable "HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName".
- Set the correct header value via the variable "HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue".
- Check that the header is not sent cross-site with the "HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin()" function.

This is also used in the default JavaScript functions, which are inserted to the above shown script if RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript is not defined:

```
var HSP_RF_CSRF_open = XMLHttpRequest.prototype.open;
XMLHttpRequest.prototype.open =
  function (method, url, async, user, password) {
    this._url = url;
    return HSP_RF_CSRF_open.apply(this, arguments);
  }

var HSP_RF_CSRF_send = XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send;
XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send =
  function () {
    if (HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin(this._url)) {
      this.setRequestHeader(HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName, HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue);
      this.setRequestHeader("X-Requested-With", "XMLHttpRequest");
    }
    return HSP_RF_CSRF_send.apply(this, arguments);
  }
```

The script above not only overwrites the prototype's ".send()" function (where the headers are added), but also the ".open()" function, which is only used to store the URL of the request. Within the ".send()" function, this variable is then passed to the "HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin()" function to ensure the headers are not added on a cross site request.

Note that the script not only sets the "HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName" header, but also the "X-Requested-With" header. This is used to distinguish requests made by JavaScript from those made by the document (for example a link in an -tag). For this reason GET requests are only checked when an "X-Requested-With" header is present. Please note that the value of this header is ignored and can have any value. Like this, a GET request originating from the document will still succeed, although it does not contain the CSRF header.

To protect all GET request [RF_CSRF_Header](#) can be combined with [RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex](#).

4.41.4.3 Examples

Example 1: Custom header name and script injected from file

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>
  <Location /header>
    AC_AccessArea          Member
    AC_LoginPage          /header/login
```



```
RF_CSRF_Header MY-CSRF-TOKEN
RF_CSRF_HeaderInjectedJS file:///tmp/csrf_inject.js
RF_CSRF_DisableVerification /header/login
</Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

With the above configuration requests to "/header" are only accepted by SRM if they contain the HTTP header "MY-CSRF-TOKEN". The contents of the file "/tmp/csrf_inject.js" are injected into the <head>-tag of each response from the backend server. The protection mechanism is disabled for the login location.

Example 2: Default header name and custom script defined inline

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>
  <Location /header>
    AC_AccessArea Member
    AC_LoginPage /header/login
    RF_CSRF_Header
    RF_CSRF_Header_InjectedJavaScript \
    var HSP_RF_CSRF_send = XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send;\n \
    XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send = \
    function() {\n \
      this.setRequestHeader(HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName, HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue);\n\
      this.setRequestHeader("X-Requested-With", "XMLHttpRequest");\n \
      return HSP_RF_CSRF_send.apply(this, arguments);\n \
    }
    RF_CSRF_DisableVerification /header/login
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

The above configuration is similar to the default script except that it does not check whether the request is sent cross-site (because it doesn't override the ".open()" function and there is no call to "HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin()"). It is mostly meant to show how an inline script can be defined. You can simply write JavaScript syntax, but the newline character has to be escaped with "\n". The backslash "\" at the end of each line is to tell SRM, that the next line belongs to the directive as well.

Example 3: Default header name and script (minimal configuration)

```
Listen 443
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>
  <Location /header>
    AC_AccessArea Member
    AC_LoginPage /header/login
    RF_CSRF_Header
    RF_CSRF_DisableVerification /header/login
  </Location>
</VirtualHost>
```

The above configuration uses defaults for both, the header name and the injected script. Requests to "/header" are only accepted by SRM if they contain the HTTP header "X-CSRF-Token". The default script is injected into the <head>-tag of each response from the backend server. The protection mechanism is again disabled for the login location.

The complete script block reaching the client with above configuration:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
function HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin(url) {
  var pageLocation = window.location;
```



```
var parser = document.createElement('a');
parser.href = url;

function getDefaultPort(prot) {
    return {"http:":"80", "https:":"443"}[prot];
}

function portOf(loc) {
    return loc.port || getDefaultPort(loc.protocol);
}

return !((parser.protocol && (parser.protocol === pageLocation.protocol)) &&
    (parser.hostname && (parser.hostname === pageLocation.host)) &&
    (parser.hostname && (portOf(parser) === portOf(pageLocation))));
}

var HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName = "X-CSRF-Token";
var HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue = "rZEXtVdeg6T-8tigmlekLu_e0DiYEiXW";
var HSP_RF_CSRF_open = XMLHttpRequest.prototype.open;
XMLHttpRequest.prototype.open = function (method, url, async, user, password) {
    this._url = url;
    return HSP_RF_CSRF_open.apply(this, arguments);
}

var HSP_RF_CSRF_send = XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send;
XMLHttpRequest.prototype.send = function() {
    if (HSP_RF_CSRF_sameOrigin(this._url)) {
        this.setRequestHeader(HSP_RF_CSRF_HeaderName, HSP_RF_CSRF_TokenValue);
        this.setRequestHeader("X-Requested-With", "XMLHttpRequest");
    }
    return HSP_RF_CSRF_send.apply(this, arguments);
}
//-->
</script>
```

4.41.5 Protection via JavaScript

The directive [RF_CSRF_DeveloperJavaScript](#) is used to instruct SRM to add a small JavaScript into each response from the application server. This script contains the two functions "getCSRFTokenName" and "getCSRFTokenValue". These functions can be used to craft valid CSRF protected requests by adding them into a form or a query parameter. This is a very general approach and the implementation is different from case to case depending on the application.

Note

Only the functions are injected and custom JavaScript code is needed. So this feature is only useful if you are in control of the application code.

Injected script example:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
<!--
function getCSRFTokenName() {
    return 'CSRF_TOKEN';
}
```



```
}  
function getCSRFTokenValue () {  
    return 'fji9NRNyfBs2b-qgt15kcq9ERjgdxqs3';  
}  
//-->  
</script>
```

Example configuration:

```
Listen 443  
<VirtualHost www.example.com:443>  
  <Location />  
    RF_CSRF                                on  
    RF_CSRF_DeveloperJavaScript            on  
    RF_CSRF_GetQueryProtectionUrlRegex    ^/query-protected/.*$  
    RF_CSRF_DisableVerification            /login  
    AC_AccessArea                          Member  
    AC_LoginPae                             /login  
  </Location>  
</VirtualHost>
```

As we have seen above, an HTML link to "/query-protected/index.html" would be extended with the CSRF token automatically by SRM. And, more important, a request to this location is only accepted if the token is present as query parameter. With the implanted functions we can now create such a valid request also via JavaScript:

```
function reqListener () {  
    console.log(this.responseText);  
}  
  
var url = "https://www.example.com/query-protected/index.html?" + ↵  
    getCSRFTokenName () + "=" + getCSRFTokenValue ();  
  
var req = new XMLHttpRequest ();  
req.addEventListener("load", reqListener);  
req.open("GET", url);  
req.send();
```

4.41.6 Use cases

The most common use cases with POST and GET requests are shown in form of tables.

The meaning of used symbols is following:

- ✓ stands for a "valid/allowed" header value, for "yes" when request is blocked
- ✗ stands for an "invalid/not allowed" header value
- ⁎ stands for "no matter whether present/valid or not"

Note that an empty cell stands for "non present" header or configuration setting.

CSRF_Token stands for the CSRF token value that can be present in the request body. X-CSRF-Token stands for the header name that can hold the CSRF token value.



4.41.7 POST requests

Table 69: Most common use cases with POST requests

Configuration settings													
RF_CSRF	on	on	on	on				on	on	on	on	on	on
RF_CSRF_Header					on	on	on	on	on	on	on	on	on
Request													
Content-Type	✓	✓	✓	✗							✓	✓	✗
CSRF-Token	✓	✗									✓	✗	
X-CSRF-Token						✓	✗		✓	✗			
X-Requested-With													
blocked		✓	✓	✓			✓	✓		✓		✓	✓

4.41.8 GET requests

Table 70: Most common use cases with GET requests

Configuration settings														
RF_CSRF	on	on	on	on				on	on	on	on	on	on	
RF_CSRF_Header				on	on	on	on	on	on	on	on	on	on	
Request														
Content-Type	✓	✓	✓	✗								✓	✓	✗
CSRF-Token	✓	✗										✓	✗	
X-CSRF-Token					*		✓	✗	✓	✗	*			
X-Requested-With						✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
blocked		✓	✓	✓		✓		✓		✓		✓	✓	

4.42 Access Control Status Handler

SRM provides the *access-control-status* handler that gives detailed information on remaining inactivity times of all locations.

```
<Location /session-timeouts>
  SetHandler access-control-status
</Location>
```

The access to the status information is done by a GET request on an existing HTTP session to the corresponding handler location; the response of the SRM is an application/json document that returns the JSON object *timeouts* containing all locations with corresponding remaining times in seconds.

For instance, assuming a virtual hosts has three locations (*/a*, */a/b*, */c*), the response could look like following:



```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: Secure Entry Server
Content-Encoding: application/json
Content-Length: 65
```

```
{
  "timeouts": {
    "/a": 28,
    "/a/b": 13
    "/c": 0
  }
}
```

A References

A.1 Documents

RFCHTTP1.1

IETF RFC 2616: HTTP 1.1 Specification
<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2616>

APACHE

Apache Web Server Administration Guide
<http://http.apache.org/docs>

APACHE_SSI

Apache Tutorial: Introduction to Server Side Includes
<http://httpd.apache.org/docs/howto/ssi.html>

MOD_SSL

SSL Module for the Apache 1.3 Web Server
<http://www.modssl.org/>

BASEADMIN

Base System Administrator's Guide

PBFOUND

Argus System, Trusted Facility Manual, PitBull Foundation, 4.0

HSP_TEMPL

HSP template files located on the installation CD in the directory "support".
The templates can also be installed on the server using the USPHSPcfg package.

MOD_SECURITY

Apache Security module to filter requests for malicious input/content.
<http://www.modsecurity.org/>

MOD_HEADER_MODIFY

Apache Module to change incoming http headers
http://www.weitz.de/mod_header_modify.html

MOD_HTTP2

Apache module for HTTP/2 support.
https://httpd.apache.org/docs/2.4/mod/mod_http2.html



B Installation Layout

B.1 Directories Structure and Usage

The table below shows the layout of directories created during installation of the HSP component packages.

This installation layout is currently used by the components htl, hts and srm.

The usage is mandatory. Not obeying the listed usage may cause demonstrational tools not to work correctly or compromise the system security.

Base directory `/opt/usp/hsp`

Table 71: Component directory structure and usage

Directory	Usage
<code><component>/bin</code>	Contains all executable files, such as start scripts, the httpd binary and other per component tools.
<code><component>/libexec</code>	SRManager only: Contains all DSO Apache modules.
<code><component>/conf</code>	(Apache) Configuration files.
<code><component>/ssl</code>	Public, generic SSL files such as CRLs or CA bundles.
<code><component>/ssl/certs</code>	Server certificates
<code><component>/ssl/private</code>	Server private keys including keys to access keys on crypto accelerators. Do not place private keys outside of this directory.
<code><component>/htdocs</code>	Static html pages, error pages
<code>component_descriptions/<component></code>	Contains per component descriptions used by the USPHSPadm scripts.